**Let Us Go On BOOK**

**By Arlen Chitwood of** [**Lamp Broadcast**](http://lampbroadcast.org/)

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

[Foreword](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php" \l "Foreword)

Ch. 1 [From Aaron to Melchizedek](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#From%20Aaron%20to%20Melchizedek)

Ch. 2 [Author of Eternal Salvation](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#Author%20of%20Eternal%20Salvation)

Ch. 3 [From Milk to Meat](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#From%20Milk%20to%20Meat)

Ch. 4 [Leaving the Principles](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#Leaving%20the%20Principles)

Ch. 5 [If They Shall Fall Away](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#If%20They%20Shall%20Fall%20Away)

Ch. 6 [Two Kinds of Growth](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#Two%20Kinds%20of%20Growth)

Ch. 7 [Things that Accompany Salvation](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#Things%20that%20Accompany%20Salvation)

Ch. 8 [Inheriting the Promises](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-seven.php#Inheriting%20the%20Promises)

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

**Foreword**

There is a logical progression in thought as one moves through the five major warnings in the book of Hebrews. And all of the warnings are directed to Christians alone, centering around the same subject matter — Christians either realizing or failing to realize the salvation of their souls/lives, synonymous with Christians either realizing or failing to realize the rights of the firstborn; and this salvation, realizing these rights, has to do strictly with the position that Christians will occupy in the coming Messianic Era ([Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV), [18-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.18-20&t=NKJV); [10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV); *cf*. [James 1:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+1.21&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 1:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.9&t=NKJV)).

In *the first warning*, the salvation set before Christians is called, *so great salvation*, and is specifically stated later in the epistle to be “*the saving of the soul.*” This is the greatest thing God has ever designed for redeemed man, for it centers around *man being removed from the earth, placed in the heavens, and occupying the throne as co-heir with the “heir of all things”* ([Hebrews 1:2-2:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.2-2.5&t=NKJV); [10:39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.39&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Hebrews 3:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.1&t=NKJV)).

Then *the second warning* outlines the route that one must travel during his pilgrim journey if he would one day come into a realization of *so great salvation*. The route carries one *from Egypt to Canaan*.

Spiritual lessons are drawn from the historic account of the Israelites under Moses, forming the type. And these spiritual lessons are seen in the antitype surrounding the experiences of Christians under Christ. The Israelites under Moses had been called out of Egypt and were being led toward *an earthly land, wherein their calling was ultimately to have been realized*. And Christians under Christ have been called out of the world and are being led toward *a heavenly land, wherein their calling is ultimately to be realized*.

With these things in mind, *the third warning* then continues with one major overriding thought: *Let Us Go On!* ([Hebrews 6:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1&t=NKJV)). The thought has to do with moving from immaturity to maturity; and this maturity, contextually, centers around Christians coming into a knowledge and understanding of the things surrounding the land set before them, for a revealed purpose.

In other words, *so great salvation* has been set before Christians (warning one), and *the route* that Christians must travel to realize this salvation has been well marked (warning two); then, with these things as an established background, the writer exhorts Christians *to go on to a mature knowledge and understanding of those truths* that God has revealed concerning the land set before them (warning three).

Entering into that land and realizing the rights of the firstborn therein is the goal of the Christians’ calling. And pressing toward this goal or any goal apart from knowing and understanding certain things about the goal, or things which may lie in the pathway, preventing one from reaching the goal, would be *unheard of.*

This is easy to see from the manner in which Christians are commanded to array themselves for the spiritual warfare in [Ephesians 6:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+6.11ff&t=NKJV), for they cannot properly array themselves apart from *a knowledge and understanding* of that which lies out ahead.

The “*helmet of salvation*,” for example, is identified as the “*hope of salvation*” (cf. [Ephesians 6:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+6.17&t=NKJV); [1 Thessalonians 5:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Thessalonians+5.8&t=NKJV)); and the “*hope of salvation*” has to do, not with the salvation that Christians presently possess, but with the salvation of the soul ([Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV), [18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.18-19&t=NKJV); [10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV)), which is the central message of the book of Hebrews.

The “*helmet of salvation*” cannot be possessed apart from a “hope” based on *knowledge and understanding*. But it is only one part of the armor, and the possession of other parts of the armor require a similar *knowledge and understanding* surrounding the goal of the Christians’ calling. And, apart from being properly arrayed for battle after the fashion revealed in [Ephesians 6:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+6.11ff&t=NKJV), Christians will suffer defeat time after time and ultimately fail to realize the goal of their calling.

Drawing from the previous two warnings in order to understand the third is the progressive manner in which the things in this book, Let Us Go On, have been structured; and this is also the progressive manner in which any correct exposition of [Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV); [6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6&t=NKJV) must be viewed.

Scripture must be understood in the light of Scripture. There is first *the near context*, and there is then *the far context*. The near context, in this case, takes one back to the previous two warnings; and the far context takes one to the various other related points in Scripture throughout both the Old and New Testaments. *One must compare “spiritual things with spiritual” if he would come into a correct knowledge and understanding of the things that God has revealed to man in His Word* ([1 Corinthians 2:9-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+2.9-13&t=NKJV)).

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter One

**From Aaron to Melchizedek**

*For every high priest taken from among men is appointed for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins.*

*He can have compassion on those who are ignorant and going astray, since he himself is also subject to weakness.*

*Because of this he is required as for the people, so also for himself, to offer sacrifices for sins.*

*And no man takes this honor to himself, but he who is called by God, just as Aaron was.*

*So also Christ did not glorify Himself to become High Priest, but it was He who said to Him: “You are My Son, today I have begotten You.”*

*As He also says in another place: “You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek.”* ([Hebrews 5:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.1-6&t=NKJV))

Aaron was a minister in the sanctuary during that period when the children of Israel, under Moses, traversed the wilderness on their pilgrim journey from Egypt to Canaan. Those Israelites constituted a nation that had experienced *death* (via a substitute) in Egypt, *burial* as they moved down into the divide between the waters of the Red Sea from the Sea’s western banks in Egypt, and *resurrection* as they moved up out of this divide between the waters on the Sea’s eastern banks in the wilderness. *The first had been set aside and the second established* ([Hebrews 10:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.9&t=NKJV)); and this nation, under Moses, passed through these experiences for *one central purpose.*

This nation was to be established within a theocracy in the land of Canaan as God’s firstborn son; and, occupying this position, the Gentile nations of the earth were to be both subject to and blessed through Israel.

God had previously made certain promises to Abraham, and He had established a covenant with Abraham concerning the land wherein these promises were to be realized. Before Abraham ever left Ur of the Chaldees, God revealed His plans and purposes in relation to Abraham, his progeny, and the Gentile nations of the earth. Then, once Abraham had left Ur and entered into the land of Canaan, God established a covenant with him concerning the land itself ([Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV); [13:14-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.14-17&t=NKJV); [15:18-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+15.18-21&t=NKJV); [17:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+17.7-8&t=NKJV)).

Within God’s plans and purposes, a nation, separate and distinct from the Gentile nations, was to be brought into existence through Abraham. The descendants of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob ([Genesis 17:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+17.18-19&t=NKJV); [21:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+21.12&t=NKJV); [27:29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+27.29&t=NKJV)), comprising this separate and distinct nation, would come under God’s *direct blessing*; but such would not be the case with any Gentile nation. The Gentile nations of the earth were to be blessed *only through* the nation emanating from the loins of Abraham, the nation of Israel.

And these blessings were to be realized by and through Israel only as this nation dwelled in a particular land — the land of Canaan, to which Abraham had been called when he left Ur. God, through an unconditional and everlasting covenant gave this land to Abraham and his seed ([Genesis 13:14-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.14-17&t=NKJV); [15:18-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+15.18-21&t=NKJV); [17:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+17.7-8&t=NKJV); [26:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+26.3&t=NKJV), [4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+26.4&t=NKJV); [28:13-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+28.13-14&t=NKJV)); and the seed of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob holds (and will always hold) the title deed to this land for one central purpose, recorded in [Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV).

Then, in keeping with [Deuteronomy 28:1-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+28.1-14&t=NKJV), the Gentile nations being blessed through Israel were also to be subject to Israel. Israel was to be placed at the head of the nations (*cf*. [Genesis 22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV); [Exodus 19:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+19.5&t=NKJV); [Deuteronomy 7:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+7.6&t=NKJV)), within a theocracy. God Himself was to dwell in the midst of His people (*cf*. [Exodus 40:34-38](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+40.34-38&t=NKJV); [Leviticus 26:11-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+26.11-12&t=NKJV); [Joel 2:27-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.27-32&t=NKJV)), blessings were to be poured out on the people of Israel ([Deuteronomy 28:2-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+28.2-14&t=NKJV)), and these blessings were to flow through Israel to the nations of the earth ([Genesis 12:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.3&t=NKJV)). That is, the nations of the earth were to be subject to Israel — God’s firstborn son, a kingdom of priests — and, in this manner, be blessed through Israel.

This is how it was to have been under the old covenant during the days of Moses, and later Joshua; and this is how it one day will be when God makes a new covenant with the house of Israel during the days of the Son of Man. Then, in that coming day, God, in the person of His Son, will dwell among the Jewish people, in a theocracy (*cf*. [Joel 2:27-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.27-32&t=NKJV)).

During Moses’ day, Aaron was a minister in the sanctuary on behalf of a people who had been redeemed from Egypt for the purpose at hand. This was an *earthly* sanctuary, and the purpose at hand was *earthly*. The Israelites had been redeemed and called out from one part of the earth to occupy a particular position in another part of the earth, within a theocracy.

In the antitype, Christ is presently ministering in a *heavenly* sanctuary (after which the earthly was patterned), and He is ministering on behalf of a people who have been redeemed from the present world for a particular purpose. Christians are presently being called out from this world to one day occupy positions in *heavenly places* (paralleling Israel’s earthly calling in a type-antitype framework [called to be “*kings and priests*,” “*a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people*”]), within a theocracy ([1 Peter 2:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+2.9&t=NKJV); [Revelation 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+5.10&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Exodus 19:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+19.5-6&t=NKJV)).

And Christ, ministering in the heavenly sanctuary today, is ministering *after the order of Aaron*. He is ministering on the basis of shed blood on behalf of a redeemed people removed from this world for a purpose, paralleling Israel’s removal from Egypt for a purpose.

(Note that Christ can minister in the sanctuary in this manner today, though not of the Levitical line, because He is not ministering as High Priest to individuals under the Mosaic Economy. Rather, He is ministering on behalf of those who form *the one new man “in Christ.”*

But in that coming day when Israel is brought back into the picture, Christ’s priesthood, of necessity, will have to change. In that day Christ will be the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek, a priesthood of an entirely different order.)

The Melchizedek priesthood though, which Christ will one day exercise, is an entirely different matter. Melchizedek was a king-priest in Jerusalem, not a minister in the sanctuary as Aaron in the past or as Christ during the present time. There’s nothing recorded in Scripture about Melchizedek in connection with a sanctuary and shed blood. This was the type of ministry Aaron occupied, not Melchizedek. And this is exactly the same type of ministry Christ presently exercises. For this reason alone (though other reasons exist), it is incorrect to associate Christ’s present high priestly ministry with the Melchizedek priesthood.

Christ though is *presently* a priest “*after the order of Melchizedek*,” but only in the same sense that Christ was also born “*King of the Jews*” (*cf*. [Matthew 2:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+2.2&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 6:19-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.19-20&t=NKJV)). Christ has yet to enter into either position; and both will be realized in that coming day when Christ comes forth as “King” in the day of His power. Or, to state matters another way, both will be realized in that coming day when Christ comes forth as the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek.

The latter part of [Hebrews 4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4&t=NKJV) deals with Christ’s present ministry in the sanctuary (patterned after the order of Aaron); but [Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV) is transitional. Chapter five moves the reader from Christ’s present ministry in the sanctuary to that future time when He comes forth from the sanctuary and assumes a different type of ministry. This chapter moves one from the antitype of Aaron (present) to the antitype of Melchizedek (future), something seen in the antitype of [Numbers 35](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35&t=NKJV).

The Death of the Priest

Numbers chapter thirty-five relates the account of God instructing the children of Israel to set aside six cities to be “*cities for refuge*.” And within this account one will find central truths surrounding that future time — which is seen in Hebrews chapter five — when the present high priestly ministry of Christ, *after the order of Aaron*, is concluded and Christ comes forth from the heavenly sanctuary as the great King-Priest, *after the order of Melchizedek*.

Three of the cities of refuge were to be on the east side of Jordan, and the three remaining were to be on the west side of Jordan ([Numbers 35:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35.14&t=NKJV)). The three cities on the east side of Jordan were selected by Moses, prior to his death and the subsequent entrance of the Israelites into the land of Canaan ([Deuteronomy 4:41-43](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+4.41-43&t=NKJV)); and the three cities on the west side of Jordan were selected by the children of Israel under the leadership of Joshua, following their entrance into the land ([Joshua 20:1-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joshua+20.1-7&t=NKJV)).

These cities were set aside to provide *a sanctuary* for any man who killed another man through an unpremeditated act. The Divine decree given to Noah and his sons following the Flood required the death of the slayer at the hands of man.

*Whoever sheds man’s blood, by man his blood shall be shed; for in the image of God He made man.* ([Genesis 9:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+9.6&t=NKJV))

And God’s injunction concerning capital punishment for a capital crime was later reiterated to Moses and is part of the Mosaic Economy as well ([Exodus 20:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+20.13&t=NKJV); [21:12ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+21.12ff&t=NKJV)).

The command concerning capital punishment for a capital crime was thus given to Noah and his sons over eight hundred years before it was delivered to the children of Israel under Moses. Consequently, man not being under the Mosaic Economy today has *nothing* to do with the validity or non-validity of capital punishment for a capital crime, for not only does the biblical origin of this injunction *precede* the giving of the Law through Moses but the command given to Noah and his sons (approx. 2,300 B.C.) *has never been repealed*.

Although capital punishment for a capital offense has never been repealed, provision was later made for a man who killed another man unintentionally. This was the divinely established purpose for setting aside the six cities of refuge (*cf*. [Exodus 21:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+21.12-13&t=NKJV)). These cities were to be located at places where at least one city would be easily accessible to any Israelite living in the land of Canaan. And should one Israelite kill another Israelite by accidental means — unintentionally — he could flee to the nearest city of refuge and be provided a sanctuary from the near kinsman of the person who had been slain.

It fell to the lot of the near kinsman to fulfill God’s injunction concerning capital punishment for a capital crime. The near kinsman was to confront the slayer and, in turn, slay him. God’s requirement in the matter was *blood for blood* ([Numbers 35:16-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35.16-21&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Deuteronomy 19:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+19.21&t=NKJV)).

God’s previous instructions to Noah and his sons remained unchanged within the framework of God’s instructions to Moses. Something though was added to these instructions within the Mosaic Economy. Provision was made for the person guilty of accidental, unpremeditated murder. And once the Israelite guilty of such an act had taken advantage of that provision — once the slayer had fled to and was inside the walls of one of the six designated cities of refuge — the near kinsman, as long as the slayer remained in this place, couldn’t touch him.

Any individual though who fled to one of the cities of refuge must, at a later time, be returned to the area where the slaying occurred and appear before a judicial court. And, should the testimony at this court prove to be negative — *i.e*., show that the man had committed the act in a willful manner — at least two witnesses were required to testify against the man in this respect.

If the slayer was found *guilty of willful murder*, he would no longer be granted sanctuary in a city of refuge. Rather, he would be turned over to the near kinsman to be slain; and the near kinsman, slaying the man, would not be guilty of blood himself.

But if the slayer, on the other hand, was found *guilty only of involuntary manslaughter*, he would be returned to the safety of the city of refuge to which he had previously fled ([Numbers 35:22-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35.22-28&t=NKJV)).

Then there was the matter of a ransom. This ransom constituted a payment for the life of the one found to have committed involuntary manslaughter. No ransom though was provided for the life of a person found guilty of willful manslaughter. Rather, he was to forfeit his own life (*blood for blood*), apart from a ransom.

But though the ransom was a provision for the one having committed involuntary manslaughter, there was a stipulation: *The ransom could not be used until the death of the high priest* ([Numbers 35:28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35.28&t=NKJV), [32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35.32&t=NKJV)).

Once the high priest in the camp of Israel had died and the ransom had been paid, the individual who had previously been found guilty only of involuntary manslaughter was then *free to leave the particular city of refuge where he had been provided a sanctuary and return to the land of his possession. And once this had occurred, the near kinsman no longer had any claim on that individual.*

1) Israel, the Slayer

In the Old Testament (in the type) it was individual Israelites who found themselves guilty of manslaughter (willful or involuntary) and, consequently, in a position where they would either be slain or be granted protection in a city of refuge. Today (in the antitype) it is the entire nation of Israel that finds itself guilty of manslaughter and in a position to either be slain or be granted protection.

The nation of Israel is guilty of *blood*. The nation is guilty of *the death of their Messiah, the Lord Jesus Christ.*

The paschal lamb was given to Israel, and *only Israel could slay this lamb* ([Exodus 12:1ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12.1ff&t=NKJV)). “Jesus” was the Paschal Lamb ([1 Corinthians 5:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+5.7&t=NKJV)), to whom all the sacrificial lambs in the Old Testament pointed; and only *Israel could have slain Jesus*, which is exactly what, according to Scripture, occurred ([Acts 2:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+2.23&t=NKJV), [36](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+2.36&t=NKJV); [3:12-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+3.12-15&t=NKJV)).

Israel today is *unclean* by its contact with the dead body of God’s Son, with cleansing to be provided *on the seventh day* — the seventh 1,000-year period, the Messianic Era ([Numbers 19:11-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+19.11-12&t=NKJV)). But how is Israel’s act, as the slayer, to be reckoned? Was it *a premeditated act?* Or was it *an unpremeditated act?*

If it was a premeditated act, the nation would have to be cut off. No ransom could be provided (it would have to be *blood for blood*; the nation would have to pay with its own life); nor, if *a premeditated act*, could the nation *ever* be allowed to return to the land of her possession (which would mean, in the final analysis, that God’s promises to Abraham, beginning with [Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV), could *never* be realized).

However, if Jesus was delivered into Israel’s hands after a manner that would allow the nation’s act of crucifying her Messiah to be looked upon as *unpremeditated murder* — *i.e.*, allow the nation’s act to be looked upon as having been done through *ignorance* — then Israel could be granted protection and a ransom could be provided. And beyond that, the ransom could one day be used by the nation, at which time Israel would be free to return to the land of her possession (allowing God’s promises to Abraham, beginning with [Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV), to be fulfilled).

The biblical testimony concerning the manner in which the nation’s act must be viewed was given by Jesus Himself at Golgotha; and the same testimony was later provided by Peter, following the death, burial, resurrection, and ascension of Christ.

Note the words of Jesus:

*. . . Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they do*.” ([Luke 23:34a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+23.34a&t=NKJV))

Then note the words of Peter:

*Men of Israel . . .*

*But you denied the Holy One and the Just, and asked for a murderer to be granted to you,*

*and killed the Prince of life, whom God raised from the dead, of which we are witnesses. . . .*

*Yet now, brethren, I know that you did it in ignorance, as did also your rulers.* ([Acts 3:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+3.12&t=NKJV), [14-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+3.14-15&t=NKJV), [17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+3.17&t=NKJV) [12a]).

Thus, Jesus was delivered into the hands of Israel (*cf*. [Exodus 21:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+21.13&t=NKJV); [Acts 2:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+2.23&t=NKJV)) after a manner that not only allowed the Jewish people to act after the described fashion but also prevented them from acting after any other fashion as well. Consequently, Israel is to be granted protection, a ransom will be provided, and the Jewish people will be free to one day avail themselves of this ransom and return to the land of their possession, *though only after the antitype of the death of the high priest*. And, at this time, *all of God’s promises to Abraham through Isaac, Jacob, and Jacob’s twelve sons, beginning with* [*Genesis 12:1-3*](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV)*, will be fulfilled*.

2) The High Priest and the Ransom

In the camp of Israel there was only one high priest at any one time. At the time of the high priest’s death, he was succeeded by another from the Aaronic line; and the high priestly ministry in the Aaronic line continued in this manner, after this fashion.

Aaron ministered in the sanctuary in the earthly tabernacle, with blood, on behalf of the people. Jesus, on the other hand, is presently ministering in the heavenly sanctuary, with blood, on behalf of the people — a ministry patterned after the order of Aaron. And, as evident from Hebrews chapter five, along with other related Scripture, Christ’s present ministry after the order of Aaron *will not* continue indefinitely.

There is coming a day when Christ’s present ministry in the heavenly sanctuary will end. And the termination of this ministry, along with certain events that will occur relative to Israel in that day, was typified by the death of the high priest in the camp of Israel and events that occurred relative to the slayer when the high priest died.

And these events, as they pertain to the slayer, have to do with two things in the antitype:

1) *Israel’s cleansing from defilement through contact with the dead body of the nation’s Messiah.*

2) *A restoration the Jewish people to the land of their possession.*

The word ransom ([Numbers 35:31-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35.31-32&t=NKJV) [translated “satisfaction,” KJV]) is from a cognate form of the word for “atonement” in the Hebrew text. The underlying thought behind “atonement” is *to cover*; and that is the same thought expressed by the “ransom” in this chapter. This ransom provided *a covering* — a covering from view, a putting away, a blotting out — of the previous capital act (an unpremeditated act). And once the ransom had been used, which could be only *after* the death of the high priest, the whole matter was *put away*. The person was then free to return to the land of his possession; and the near kinsman of the one slain could no longer have any claim on him whatsoever, for the matter had been put away and could never be brought up again.

(In the type, this ransom was connected with some aspect of the person and work of the high priest, or of other priests. For example, this ransom could not be used *until the high priest had died*. Then, this ransom had to do with *a covering* [with *atonement*] from defilement wrought through contact with a dead body. And such a work in [Numbers 19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+19&t=NKJV), where cleansing from this type defilement is dealt with, was performed by *a priest.*

The high priestly ministry of Aaron and his successors in the camp of Israel, whether in this or in other areas of defilement, was a work on behalf of *the saved*, not the unsaved. Their work was for those who had already appropriated the blood of slain paschal lambs, pointing to Christ and His shed blood at Calvary [the slain Paschal Lamb]. This succession of high priests ministered in this manner, on the basis of shed blood, typifying Christ’s present ministry in the sanctuary after this same fashion [a ministry for the saved, on the basis of shed blood].

Thus, that which is being dealt with in [Numbers 35](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35&t=NKJV) — portending a priestly work — has to do with *the cleansing of saved individuals from defilement* [defilement wrought through contact with a dead body], not with issues surrounding the death of the firstborn [issues surrounding eternal salvation].

And the Jewish people, for two reasons, find themselves in a position today where they cannot avail themselves of this cleansing [cleansing from contact with the dead body of their Messiah]:

1) The Jewish people today are in *an unsaved state*.

2) The Jewish people, even if they were in a saved state today, could not presently avail themselves of the ransom [cleansing] because of *the nature of Christ’s present priestly ministry*.

Cleansing from all defilement during the present dispensation is brought to pass through only *one means* — through Christ’s present ministry in the heavenly sanctuary, on the basis of His shed blood on the mercy seat. Though Christ is not of the Levitical line, His present ministry is patterned after the order of Aaron’s ministry; and, because Christ is not of the Levitical line, if God were dealing with Israel on a national basis today, He could not deal with the Jewish people in relation to Christ’s present ministry in the sanctuary [else He would violate that which He Himself established].

The Jewish people, if they were being dealt with in relation to the priesthood today, would have to be dealt with in relation to that which is set forth concerning the priesthood in the Mosaic Economy [as will be seen through the covenant Antichrist will make with Israel during the coming Tribulation, when God completes His national dealings with Israel during Man’s Day]. The priest, within the Mosaic Economy, had to be of *the Levitical line*. And Christ is not of this line. Christ is from the tribe of Judah.

Thus, dealing with the Jewish people in relation to Christ’s high priestly ministry today would be *completely out of the question*. They could not go to Christ and receive cleansing, for the Mosaic Economy does not recognize a priestly ministry of the nature Christ is presently exercising [a non-Levitical ministry patterned after the order of Aaron, a Levite]. And any priesthood that the Jewish people themselves could enact today, from the Levitical line, would be completely non-efficacious.

However, as previously seen, note that Christ [though from the tribe of Judah] *can conduct* a ministry patterned after the order of Aaron for Christians during the present dispensation, *for Christians are not under the Mosaic Economy.* Christians form part of *the one new man*, which is neither Jew nor Gentile [*cf*. [Galatians 3:26-29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.26-29&t=NKJV); [Ephesians 2:12-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.12-15&t=NKJV)]. Thus, for Christians, Christ’s lineage *has nothing to do with the matter one way or the other.*

But, before the Jewish people can enter into the picture as matters pertain to the priesthood and the ransom, seen in [Numbers 35](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35&t=NKJV), Christ must *first* terminate His present ministry in the sanctuary and come forth as the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek. And, as well, a new covenant [which will replace the old covenant] will be made with Israel at this time [[Jeremiah 31:31-34](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jeremiah+31.31-34&t=NKJV)].

In the preceding respect, from the vantage point of the antitype, it is an easy matter to see why the high priest in the camp of Israel had to die before the slayer could avail himself of the ransom and return to the land of his possession. God had simply established and brought matters to pass after this fashion in the history of Israel in order to form a type, with a view to the antitype. Christ’s high priestly ministry in the sanctuary has to terminate *first*. *Only then* can the slayer [Israel] avail herself of the ransom and return to the land of her possession.)

Thus, the ransom for Israel’s capital offense has already been paid. Jesus paid this ransom at Calvary, shedding His own blood — blood that is presently on the mercy seat in the heavenly sanctuary. However, although the ransom (providing atonement) for Israel’s sin has already been paid, the nation cannot avail herself of this ransom or return to the land of her possession *until the antitype of the death of the high priest.*

Israel though must *first* experience her national Passover in fulfillment of [Exodus 12:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12.7&t=NKJV) and [Leviticus 23:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+23.5&t=NKJV) — by applying the blood that was shed 2,000 years ago. And this can occur *only* at the termination of Israel’s present blindness ([Romans 11:25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+11.25&t=NKJV)). Israel, as the two disciples on the road to Emmaus in [Luke 24:13ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.13ff&t=NKJV), *must continue in a blinded condition* until the resurrected Christ, by His personal presence at His second coming, opens the Old Testament Scriptures to the Jewish people’s understanding in this respect (*cf*. [Luke 24:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.16&t=NKJV), [25-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.25-27&t=NKJV), [31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.31&t=NKJV)).

In that day, Israel’s eyes will be *opened*; and a nation will be “*born at once*” ([Isaiah 66:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+66.8&t=NKJV)). The entire nation will experience *the birth from above at the same time* [when the Jewish people look upon the One whom “*they have pierced*” ([Zechariah 12:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Zechariah+12.10&t=NKJV))]). And this will occur only after Christ terminates His present ministry, departs the heavenly sanctuary, and comes forth as the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek. *Then cleansing can occur, allowing the ransom seen in Numbers chapter thirty-five to be accessed.*

It will be in that day — not before — that Israel will experience her national Passover, be able to avail herself of the ransom, and be free to return to the land of her possession. As long as Christ occupies His present position in the heavenly sanctuary, Israel cannot avail herself of the paid ransom and return to this land. Israel must remain in her present condition — blinded — throughout the present dispensation; and, according to related Scripture, Israel will not be removed from this condition until a few years beyond the present dispensation, at the end of Man’s Day, at the end of the Tribulation.

(Insofar as Christians are concerned, Christ’s present ministry in the heavenly sanctuary will terminate when the Church is removed from the earth into the heavens, at the end of the present dispensation. However, Christ’s ministry in the sanctuary will apparently continue for others through the Tribulation, else the saved among the earth-dwellers would have no High Priest.

Christ though will not come forth as the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek, appearing to Israel after this fashion, until the end of Man’s Day, the end of the Tribulation. And it will be only at this time that events surrounding the antitype of the death of the high priest in Numbers chapter thirty-five can occur.)

Also, the Jewish people one day availing themselves of the ransom in [Numbers 35](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+35&t=NKJV) would correspond with the fulfillment of events set forth in the second and sixth of the seven feasts of the Lord in [Leviticus 23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+23&t=NKJV) — *the feast of Unleavened Bread*, which immediately followed the Passover, and *the Day of Atonement*.

“Leaven” points to that which is *vile, corrupt* (*cf*. [Matthew 13:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+13.33&t=NKJV); [16:1-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+16.1-12&t=NKJV); [1 Corinthians 5:6-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+5.6-8&t=NKJV)); and the fulfillment of this festival in the type had to do with *a cleansing of the house, a removing of all leaven from the house immediately following the Passover* (*cf*. [Exodus 12:8-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12.8-20&t=NKJV); [Leviticus 23:6-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+23.6-8&t=NKJV)).

And in the antitype, it is the same. The fulfillment of this festival will immediately follow the fulfillment of the Passover. It will occur immediately following Israel applying the blood of the slain Paschal Lamb, blood shed 2,000 years prior to this time. And because Israel had previously shed this blood, the entire house of Israel will be found in an *unclean* condition in that day, *an uncleanness that will have to be dealt with*.

Israel, in that day, will be found in this *unclean* condition due to the nation’s prior contact with the dead body of their Messiah. The house, resultantly, will be found *completely leavened. And the leaven will have to be removed; it will have to be put out, done away with.*

But, though all things associated with *leaven* will be put out of the house (fulfilling the second festival, the festival of Unleavened Bread), *cleansing* cannot occur until events surrounding the fulfillment of the sixth festival (the Day of Atonement) take place. *Only then* will the nation be able to access the ransom, be cleansed of defilement due to contact with the dead body of their Messiah, and be free to return to the land of their possession. *Only then* can the seventh and last festival be realized — the feast of Tabernacles, a time of rest at the completion of the previous six festivals, foreshadowing the time of rest awaiting the people of God (a seventh-day rest, a Sabbath rest), the Messianic Era.

This is where the account of the slayer availing himself of the ransom in Numbers chapter thirty-five, following the death of the high priest, is seen being fulfilled in the antitype (along with the fulfillment of that which is seen in [Numbers 19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+19&t=NKJV)). *Israel in that day will be cleansed of this defilement, and the house will no longer be leavened*.

Accordingly, *only in that coming day*, only following cleansing from Israel’s present defilement wrought through prior contact with the dead body of the nation’s Messiah, will the Jewish people be free to return to the land covenanted to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and *only then* can the Jewish people realize their calling in this land, with God’s promised blessings flowing out through Israel to the Gentile nations of the earth after the fashion that God intended when He called this nation into existence.

(A knowledge of the preceding facts will reveal not only truths surrounding Christ’s present and future ministries but also truths surrounding Israel’s present and future status as a nation in the Middle East. Christ is *still ministering* in the heavenly sanctuary, with the antitype of the death of the high priest yet to occur; and Israel *still remains in unbelief*. Consequently, Israel — being *unable* to presently avail herself of the paid ransom — will not only *continue in unbelief*, but the nation, as well, *cannot return to the land of her possession during the present day and time.*

To equate the present restoration of a remnant of the descendants of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob to the land of Israel with the fulfillment of any of the Old Testament prophecies dealing with Israel’s restoration to this land [such as the vision of the valley of dry bones in [Ezekiel 37](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+37&t=NKJV)] is to ignore the fact that Israel is the slayer. *And this is an established biblical fact that cannot be ignored.*

The present restoration of a remnant to the land can have *nothing whatsoever* to do with the fulfillment of any of the numerous Old Testament prophecies surrounding Israel’s restoration. The fulfillment [after any fashion] of such promises today, from a biblical standpoint, is *impossible*, for Christ is *still ministering* after the order of Aaron in the heavenly sanctuary.

Thus, the ransom that Christ paid to effect Israel’s cleansing *cannot* presently be used; *nor can* Israel return to the land of her possession today. These things are reserved for *the seventh day, the Lord’s Day*, which lies just ahead.

However, a remnant must be present in the land immediately preceding the end of Man’s Day for certain prophecies surrounding Israel and the nations to be fulfilled, though the existence of this remnant has nothing to do with the fulfillment of Old Testament prophecies surrounding Israel’s restoration. Thus, the existence of the nation of Israel in the land today [consisting of almost 6,000,000 Jews] is neither the beginning of nor a partial fulfillment of any Old Testament prophecy surrounding Israel’s restoration to the land. Rather, this remnant in the land is the result of a Zionistic work among the Jews during about the past century, and this remnant constitutes the existence of an end-time Israeli nation that must be present in the land in order to bring about the fulfillment of numerous Old Testament prophecies surrounding Israel and the nations immediately preceding Christ’s return.

In this respect, the remnant in the land today constitutes the nation that will shortly make the seven-year covenant with Antichrist. And this remnant will, in turn, later be uprooted from the land [something that will *never* occur after the Jewish people have been re-gathered to the land in fulfillment of Old Testament prophecy (*cf*. [Isaiah 2:1-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+2.1-4&t=NKJV); [Jeremiah 32:37-44](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jeremiah+32.37-44&t=NKJV); [Ezekiel 37:19-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+37.19-28&t=NKJV); [39:25-29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+39.25-29&t=NKJV); [Joel 2:27-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.27-32&t=NKJV); [Micah 4:1-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Micah+4.1-7&t=NKJV))].

In the middle of the Tribulation, when Antichrist breaks his covenant with Israel, the nation of Israel, as we know it today, will be uprooted from their land; and the Jews dwelling in the land at that time, who do not escape to places of safety out among the nations, or the place that God will have specially prepared for them in the mountainous or desert terrain of the land [[Matthew 24:16-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.16-20&t=NKJV); [Revelation 12:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+12.6&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+12.14&t=NKJV)], will either be slain or be sold as slaves throughout the Gentile world [*cf*. [Joel 3:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+3.6&t=NKJV); [Luke 21:20-24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+21.20-24&t=NKJV); [Revelation 11:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+11.2&t=NKJV)].

During the last half of the Tribulation there will be no Jewish nation in the Middle East. Rather, Jerusalem, the capital of Jewry, will be “*trodden down of the Gentiles*” until the full end of Daniel’s Seventy-Week prophecy, which marks the end of “*the times of the Gentiles*” [*cf*. [Daniel 9:24-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+9.24-27&t=NKJV); [Luke 21:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+21.24&t=NKJV); [Revelation 11:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+11.2&t=NKJV)].

During this time, the entire world — particularly the center of Antichrist’s kingdom in the Middle East [including the land of Israel as we know it today] — will become like Nazi Germany during the final six years of the Third Reich [1939-1945]. And when the Holocaust of that coming day reaches its darkest hour, Messiah will return, and He Himself will affect the prophesied re-gathering of the nation [[Matthew 24:15-31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.15-31&t=NKJV); [Luke 21:20-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+21.20-27&t=NKJV)].

Christ must first complete His present ministry in the sanctuary and return to earth as the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek. Only then can Israel avail herself of the ransom and return to the land of her possession.)

My Son, a Priest

There are two quotations from the Old Testament in [Hebrews 5:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5-6&t=NKJV), and both are Messianic in their scope of fulfillment. There is first the quotation from [Psalm 2:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.7&t=NKJV),

*You are My Son, today I have begotten You*. ([Hebrews 5:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5&t=NKJV))

*And then there is the quotation from* [Psalm 110:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.4&t=NKJV),

*You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek*. ([Hebrews 5:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.6&t=NKJV))

These two quotations are used together, referring to one and the same time. They refer to that time in the [Psalm 2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2&t=NKJV) when God states,

*Yet I have set My King on My holy hill of Zion*. ([Psalm 2:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.6&t=NKJV))

And they refer to that time in [Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV) when God states,

*The LORD shall send the rod of Your strength out of Zion. Rule in the midst of Your enemies!* ([Psalm 110:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.2&t=NKJV))

Both quotations in Hebrews are from Messianic passages in the Old Testament, leaving no room to question the time of their fulfillment. “Zion” is *Jerusalem* ([Psalm 76:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+76.2&t=NKJV); [126:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+126.1&t=NKJV); [Isaiah 1:26-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+1.26-27&t=NKJV)), and the Old Testament quotations in [Hebrews 5:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5-6&t=NKJV) simply refer to that future day when Christ will exercise His kingly office in this city, on the earth.

1) [Psalm 2:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.7&t=NKJV)

[Psalm 2:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.7&t=NKJV) is quoted three places in the New Testament. It is quoted by Luke in [Acts 13:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+13.33&t=NKJV), and it is quoted twice by the writer of Hebrews ([Hebrews 1:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.5&t=NKJV); [5:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5&t=NKJV)).

The words, “*You are My Son*,” form an allusion to [2 Samuel 7:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+7.14&t=NKJV) in the Davidic covenant: “*I will be His father, and he shall be My son* . . . .”

And to view the [Psalm 2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2&t=NKJV) from the perspective of the Davidic covenant, this Psalm reveals the fulfillment of God’s threefold promise to David in [2 Samuel 7:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+7.12-13&t=NKJV):

1) David was to have a Son ([2 Samuel 7:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+7.12&t=NKJV)).

2) David’s Son was to sit on his throne ([2 Samuel 7:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+7.12-13&t=NKJV)).

3) The kingdom, under this Son’s reign, was to be established forever ([2 Samuel 7:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+7.13&t=NKJV)).

Accordingly, God’s promise to David, rather than being fulfilled through his son, Solomon, finds its fulfillment through his greater Son, the Lord Jesus Christ.

1) He is the One to whom God will give “*the throne of his father David*.”

2) He is the One who will “*reign over the house of Jacob forever*.”

3) He is the One who will possess a kingdom of which “*there shall be no end*” ([Luke 1:31-33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+1.31-33&t=NKJV)).

This is exactly what is in view in [Acts 13:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+13.33&t=NKJV), where [Psalm 2:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.7&t=NKJV) is quoted for the first time in the New Testament. [Acts 13:34](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+13.34&t=NKJV) goes on to state, “*And that He raised Him from the dead* . . . .” That is, concerning Jesus one day occupying the throne of David and reigning over the house of Jacob, fulfilling God’s promises in the Davidic covenant, God raised Him from the dead. And the same verse concludes with the statement, “*I will give you the sure mercies of David* [*lit*., ‘I will give you the holy things of David’ (which, contextually, can only be a reference to things surrounding the Davidic covenant)].”

[Psalm 2:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.7&t=NKJV) must likewise be looked upon as Messianic in its two usages in the book of Hebrews. In the chapter one the verse comprises one of seven Messianic quotations that make up most of the chapter, and it is used here in connection with the parallel quotation from the Davidic covenant in [2 Samuel 7:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+7.14&t=NKJV) ([Psalm 2:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+2.5&t=NKJV)). And in Hebrews chapter five the verse is used in connection with that future time when Christ will come forth from the sanctuary and exercise the Melchizedek priesthood ([Hebrews 5:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5-6&t=NKJV)).

2) [Psalm 110:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.4&t=NKJV)

Melchizedek is mentioned eleven times in Scripture — two times in the Old Testament ([Genesis 14:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18&t=NKJV); [Psalm 110:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.4&t=NKJV)) and nine times in the book of Hebrews ([Hebrews 5-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5-7&t=NKJV)). And the manner in which Melchizedek is presented in the Old Testament will govern the manner in which he *must* be viewed in the book of Hebrews.

Melchizedek first appears in Scripture when Abraham was returning from the battle of the kings ([Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV)). Melchizedek was “*king of Salem* [‘king of Jerusalem’ ([Psalm 76:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+76.2&t=NKJV))]” and “*priest of the Most High God*” ([Genesis 14:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18&t=NKJV)). Thus, he was a king-priest in Jerusalem.

Meeting Abraham, following the battle of the kings, he brought forth bread and wine and blessed Abraham, saying,

“*Blessed be Abram of God Most High, Possessor of heaven and earth*” ([Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV)).

It is evident that Melchizedek’s actions in the type during the days of Abraham were Messianic in their scope of fulfillment in the antitype. Immediately prior to Christ’s death at Calvary, He partook of the Passover with His disciples ([Matthew 26:19ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.19ff&t=NKJV)). And at the end of the Passover feast — after Jesus had participated with His disciples in the breaking of bread and drinking from the cup, along with His instructions to them concerning both ([Matthew 26:26-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.26-28&t=NKJV)) — Jesus said,

“*But I say to you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it new with you in My Father’s kingdom*” ([Matthew 26:29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.29&t=NKJV)).

This could only be an allusion to one thing — that future day when Christ will come forth in the antitype of Melchizedek as he is presented in [Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV), with bread and wine to bless Abraham and his descendants, both *heavenly* and *earthly* (*cf*. [Genesis 22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV)). And this is an event that will occur following the battle of the kings (*cf*. [Revelation 19:17-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+19.17-21&t=NKJV)).

[Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV), where Melchizedek is referred to the only other time in the entire Old Testament, as previously seen, is also Messianic in its scope of fulfillment. It must be, for this is the way Melchizedek is presented in Genesis, and there can be no change when one comes to the book of Psalms.

The Son is told to sit on the Father’s right hand until such a time as His enemies are made His “*footstool*” ([Psalm 110:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.1&t=NKJV)). Then, after His enemies have been made His footstool, He is going to *rule* “*in the midst*” of His enemies ([Psalm 110:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.2&t=NKJV)). He is going to “*strike through kings*” and “*judge among the heathen* [Gentiles]” in that coming day of His “*power*” ([Psalm 110:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.3&t=NKJV), [5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.5-6&t=NKJV)), a day when He will be revealed as the great King-Priest in Jerusalem, “*after the order of Melchizedek*” ([Psalm 110:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.4&t=NKJV)).

[Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV) and [Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV) *must* be understood in the light of one another (actually, [Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV) draws from [Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV)), and [Hebrews 5-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5-7&t=NKJV) *must* be understood in the light of both Old Testament references. Thus, all eleven references to Melchizedek in Scripture can only be looked upon after one fashion — *as Messianic in their scope of fulfillment.*

(Concerning the absence of the mention of *a sanctuary and shed blood* in connection with Melchizedek, this would not be the case as matters are seen in the antitype, in that future day, when Christ comes forth as the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek and a new covenant is made with the House of Israel. Covenants are, at times, associated with *death and shed blood* in Scripture, as is the new covenant [*cf*. [Genesis 15:9-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+15.9-21&t=NKJV); [Jeremiah 34:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jeremiah+34.18&t=NKJV); [Matthew 26:28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.28&t=NKJV)]. There is an allusion to this in [Hebrews 7:21-22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+7.21-22&t=NKJV):

*The LORD has sworn and will not relent, “You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek.”*

*by so much more Jesus has become a surety of a better covenant.*

Then, when Christ deals with Israel in relation to sin at the time of His return [fulfilling that which is foreshadowed by events on the Day of Atonement], of necessity, *death and shed blood and a sanctuary, will have to be in view*. And also, of necessity, Jesus will have to be exercising *the Melchizedek priesthood* at this time.

Thus, in the preceding respect, one could find *death and shed blood, along with a sanctuary, associated with the Melchizedek priesthood*. But that is strictly future, it involves Israel alone, and it has nothing to do with Christ’s present priestly ministry on behalf of Christians.)

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Two

**Author of Eternal Salvation**

*Who, in the days of His flesh, when He had offered up prayers and supplications, with vehement cries and tears to Him who was able to save Him from death, and was heard because of His godly fear,*

*though He was a Son, yet He learned obedience by the things that He suffered.*

*And having been perfected, He became the author of eternal salvation to all who obey Him.* ([Hebrews 5:7-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.7-9&t=NKJV)).

Christ, during what the writer of Hebrews calls, “*the days of His flesh*,” passed through certain human experiences. “*Wisdom and stature,*” in connection with Christ’s growth from childhood to manhood, were part of these experiences ([Luke 2:52](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+2.52&t=NKJV)); testing, emotions, hunger, sufferings, and numerous other things that man experiences were, as well, things that Christ also experienced ([Luke 4:1-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+4.1-13&t=NKJV); [22:44](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+22.44&t=NKJV); [John 11:35](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+11.35&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 4:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.15&t=NKJV); [5:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.7-8&t=NKJV)).

One thing above all else must be kept in mind when viewing these human experiences that Christ passed through. Christ’s deity, during His earthly ministry, cannot be separated from His humanity. That is, during this time, Christ was not God and Man; rather, He was the God-Man. *At no time, beginning with the incarnation, can one be separated from the other.*

The question thus becomes: How could Christ increase in “*wisdom and stature*,” be “*tempted*,” learn “*obedience*,” or pass through certain other human experiences after a similar fashion if He was, at the same time, fully God? Or, to ask the question another way: How could Christ, being God Himself, and omniscient, increase in or learn human traits and characteristics by becoming a member of the human race that He Himself had brought into existence?

After all, at the age of twelve, He entered into the Temple in Jerusalem and confounded the “*teachers*” (KJV: “doctors”) with His wisdom and understanding of matters; and, at the same time, He exhibited knowledge of that which He must accomplish completely outside Joseph and Mary’s understanding of the matter ([Luke 2:41-50](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+2.41-50&t=NKJV)). Then, on numerous occasions, He either exercised His deity or could have exercised it ([Matthew 26:53](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.53&t=NKJV); [Mark 1:24-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+1.24-26&t=NKJV); [Luke 22:61](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+22.61&t=NKJV); [John 1:48](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.48&t=NKJV); [11:25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+11.25&t=NKJV), [43-44](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+11.43-44&t=NKJV); [18:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+18.5-6&t=NKJV)).

Probably the most graphic testimony that Scripture presents pertaining to the inseparability of Christ’s humanity from His deity surrounds the events of Calvary and the empty tomb.

It was *the blood of God* that was shed at Calvary, the same blood that is presently on the mercy seat in the Holy of Holies of the heavenly tabernacle today (*cf*. [Acts 20:28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+20.28&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 9:11-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+9.11-12&t=NKJV)). And *Jesus raised Himself from the dead*, restoring life to *the Temple of God* ([John 2:18-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+2.18-21&t=NKJV)).

The day of the Passover, 33 A.D., was *the day God died*; and not only did *the Son raise Himself*, but *God the Father raised Him* ([Romans 10:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+10.9&t=NKJV)), and *the Spirit raised Him* ([Romans 8:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+8.11&t=NKJV)). This would have had to be the case, for an inseparable identification exists between the members of the Godhead.

Jesus, prior to His crucifixion, referred to His “*body*” as *the Temple of God*:

*Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.*

*. . . He was speaking of the temple of His body”* ([John 2:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+2.19&t=NKJV), [21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+2.21&t=NKJV) [19b]).

There are two Greek words used for “Temple” in the New Testament — *hieron* and *naos*. The former refers, not to the Temple proper, but to the outer porches, porticoes, etc. It is the latter word that refers to the Temple proper, with its innermost place, the Holy of Holies where God Himself dwelled among His people for over eight centuries during Old Testament days.

The Glory of the Lord (the manifestation of God among His people) though had departed from the Holy of Holies long before Christ was upon earth. It departed at the time God allowed His people to be taken captive into Babylon ([Ezekiel 10:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+10.4&t=NKJV), [18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+10.18&t=NKJV); [11:22-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+11.22-23&t=NKJV)), about six centuries prior to Christ’s first appearance. And during the entire Times of the Gentiles — though a Temple was built following the Babylonian captivity (constructed during the days of Zerubbabel and rebuilt during the days of Herod), and another will be built during the days of Antichrist — there neither has been nor will be *the Deity* within the Jewish Temple. The Glory of the Lord will return to the Temple *only* after the Times of the Gentiles has run its course, Christ returns, and the millennial Temple has been brought into existence ([Ezekiel 43:2-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+43.2-5&t=NKJV)).

The Greek word used relative to the body of Christ being the Temple of God is *naos*, not *hieron*. That is, this was a structure in which the Deity dwelled. Christ was “*the Word*,” who “*was God*,” who “*was made flesh, and dwelt* [*lit*., ‘tabernacled’] *among us*” ([John 1:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.1-3&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.14&t=NKJV)).

(Different words are used in the Greek text for verbs translated the same in the English text of [John 1:1-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.1-14&t=NKJV). The verb used in [John 1:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.1-2&t=NKJV) — “*In the beginning was the Word* . . . .” — is a verb of being and has no reference to *time* in relation to a beginning or an end. Also, there is no article before “*beginning*” in the Greek text. The thought is simply, “*In beginning* [there are different beginnings in Scripture (for the earth, angels, man, etc.)] *the Word existed without reference to a beginning or an end* [*for the Word has neither*] . . . .”

Then in [John 1:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.14&t=NKJV) different verb is used, which has reference to a definite *time* of beginning — “*And the Word was made* [‘became’] *flesh* . . . .” There was a point in *time* when the eternal Word “*became flesh*, *and tabernacled among us*,” though the incarnation wrought no change relative to the way in which the Word is presented prior to this time in verses one and two. The Word was just as much fully God following the incarnation as before the incarnation.)

Thus, the true Tabernacle or Temple in Israel during the days Christ was on earth and was not the earthly structure on the Temple Mount (though Christ referred to this structure as, “*My house*” [[Matthew 21:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+21.13&t=NKJV)]) but “*the Word*” *who became flesh and tabernacled among His people*. It was this individual — God Himself, tabernacling among His people — that the priests of the earthly tabernacle (the tabernacle that no longer housed the Deity) reviled, mistreated, and persuaded the multitude that they should call for His crucifixion ([Matthew 26:59ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.59ff&t=NKJV); [John 19:6ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.6ff&t=NKJV)).

A verse often misunderstood, though one of the clearest and strongest verses in Scripture relative to Christ’s deity is [Mark 13:32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+13.32&t=NKJV):

*But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father.*

Seemingly, the way that the text is structured, Christ separated Himself from the Father and stated that He, like fallen man, did not know certain things that the Father *alone* knew. However, such was not the case at all.

The text clearly states that the Father *alone* had knowledge of the things involved, but the simple fact of the matter is that the Father and Son were “one” ([John 10:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+10.30&t=NKJV) [*cf*. [John 10:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+10.33&t=NKJV)]; [John 14:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+14.9&t=NKJV)). The Son, thus, had to, of necessity, possess the same knowledge, for He was then, and remains today, *God of very God* (*cf*. [Colossians 1:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+1.9&t=NKJV)).

The problem lies in the English translation of [Mark 13:32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+13.32&t=NKJV); and a proper translation will not only reveal that the Son of Man was the God-Man but it will also reveal the inseparability of His humanity from His deity. The *Son of Man* was, and remains today, *fully God as well as fully Man*.

The word “*but*” in the latter part of [Mark 13:32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+13.32&t=NKJV) is a translation of the Greek words, *ei me*. Literally translated, these two words mean, “if not,” or “except.” What Jesus said was that He couldn’t know *“that day and that hour” if He were not the Father*, for the Father *alone* knew.

Archbishop Trench, one of the great authorities from a past generation on word studies in the Greek text, translated this verse,

*“If I were not God as well as Man, even I would not know the day or the hour.”*

And this appears to capture the exact thought of the passage about as well as any English translation, for not only is the translation true to the text but it is true to the testimony of the whole of Scripture.

Thus, returning to the human experiences that Christ passed through, one thing above all else must be kept in mind: At no point in Christ’s earthly existence — from the incarnation to the ascension — can His deity be separated from His humanity. *He was the God-Man. He was just as much fully God as He was fully Man*; and from the point of the incarnation forward the matter is as stated in [Hebrews 13:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+13.8&t=NKJV),

*Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever.*

Consequently, not only must the passages in [Luke 2:52](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+2.52&t=NKJV) and [Hebrews 4:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.15&t=NKJV); [5:7-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.7-9&t=NKJV) be understood in this light but any part of Scripture touching on Christ’s humanity must be understood after the same fashion.

Sufferings, Death

During events surrounding Christ’s crucifixion, He suffered like no other man could possibly suffer, for, along with His *physical sufferings*, He suffered from a *spiritual* standpoint after a fashion that it was impossible for anyone else to suffer. And the latter sufferings, according to Scripture, were far worse than the former.

1) Physical Sufferings

Insofar as His physical sufferings were concerned, the Prophet Isaiah, over seven centuries before this time, stated,

*. . . His visage was marred more than any man, and His form more than the sons of men.* ([Isaiah 52:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.14&t=NKJV))

He was spat upon and beaten by the Jewish religious leaders; then He was turned over to Pilate, who, after dealing with Him a second time, had Him “*scourged*” and “*delivered*” into the hands of his soldiers to be crucified; and the Roman soldiers, following His scourging, arrayed Him as a pseudo King and repeatedly mocked Him, spat on Him, and struck Him on the head with what was apparently a hard bamboo-like reed ([Matthew 26:67](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.67&t=NKJV); [27:26-31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+27.26-31&t=NKJV))

A literal rendering of [Isaiah 52:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.14&t=NKJV) would reveal that His physical appearance would be so altered by the time He was placed on the Cross that it would appear to actually not be that of a man; and the same verse states that because of His mutilated physical appearance *many* would be “*astonished*” when they looked upon the One about to be crucified.

Actually, [Isaiah 52:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.14&t=NKJV) is set between two sections of Scripture dealing with that future day when Christ rules and reigns over the earth ([Isaiah 52:1-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.1-13&t=NKJV), [15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.15&t=NKJV)). Verses one through thirteen introduce the subject (His coming day of glory and exaltation), verse fourteen moves the reader back 2,000 years in time (referring to His suffering and humiliation), and then verse fifteen moves the reader forward once again to that time introduced in verses one through thirteen.

A parallel is shown between that which would occur at the two advents of Christ. *The degree of His suffering and humiliation* would parallel, in an opposite sense, *the degree of His glory and exaltation*. This is why the writer of Hebrews, speaking of Christ, could state,

*. . . who for the joy that was set before Him [the day when He would rule and reign over the earth] endured the cross, despising the shame . . . .* ([Hebrews 12:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.2&t=NKJV)).

In that coming day the same scenes that witnessed His suffering and humiliation are going to witness His glory and exaltation. He is going to be *“exalted,” “judge between the nations,”* and “*rebuke many people*” ([Isaiah 2:2-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+2.2-4&t=NKJV); [52:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.13&t=NKJV)). In that day,

*. . . kings shall shut their mouths at Him; for what had not been told them they shall see, and what they had not heard they shall consider.*” ([Isaiah 52:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.15&t=NKJV))

Those who look upon Him in that coming day will once again be “*astonished*,” *though after a different fashion, for His coming glory and exaltation must, in an opposite sense, parallel His past suffering and humiliation*. And, as *His physical appearance* resulted in the people being astonished in the past, so will *His physical appearance* result in the people being astonished in that future day.

In the past Christ appeared apart from His Glory. He possessed a body like unto the body that man possesses today, void of the covering of Glory in which man was enswathed prior to the fall. It was in this body that He suffered, bled, and died; it was in this body that the very God of the universe, in the person of His Son, appeared in humiliation and shame on behalf of sinful man; and it was in this body, in the person of His Son, that God Himself was so beaten that people looked upon Him in astonishment.

But in that coming day, matters will be just the opposite. Though Christ will return in the same body that He has possessed since the incarnation, it will no longer be void of the covering of Glory. Nor will He return as the *suffering “Lamb of God.”* All of this will be past. In that coming day He will return as the *conquering “Lion of the tribe of Judah.”* And when men see Him in that day, they will look upon One whose “*countenance*” is “*as the sun shining in its strength*” (*cf*. [Revelation 1:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+1.16&t=NKJV); [19:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+19.11ff&t=NKJV)). *And man will once again be astonished.*

(Note that [Isaiah 53](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+53&t=NKJV), set between two Messianic chapters ([Isaiah 52](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52&t=NKJV); [54](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+54&t=NKJV)), forms Israel’s confession as the nation goes forth as God’s witness to the Gentile nations of the earth during the Messianic Era.)

*Who has believed our* [Israel’s] *report? . . .*

. . . *He was wounded for our* [Israel’s] *transgressions, He was bruised for our* [Israel’s] *iniquities . . . and by His stripes we* [the Jewish people] *are healed*. ([Isaiah 53:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+53.1&t=NKJV), [5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+53.5&t=NKJV) [1a]; *cf*. [Isaiah 1:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+1.5-6&t=NKJV), [25-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+1.25-2&t=NKJV):5)

2) Spiritual Sufferings

Christ’s spiritual sufferings began in the Garden, continued with His being arrayed as a pseudo King (twice [first by Herod, then by the Roman soldiers]), and terminated with the Father turning away from the Son while He hung upon the Cross.

In the Garden, anticipating that which lay ahead, Christ requested three times of the Father that “this cup” might pass from Him; but the prayer was always followed by the statement, “nevertheless not as I will, but as You will” ([Matthew 26:39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.39&t=NKJV), [42](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.42&t=NKJV), [44](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.44&t=NKJV)).

The “*cup*” that Jesus had to drink should be understood in the light of His present spiritual sufferings. Drinking this cup could have no reference to the events of Calvary *per se*, for Jesus — in view of the purpose for man’s creation in the beginning and the necessity for redemption’s price being paid — could never have made such a request. But the sufferings that Jesus began to endure in the Garden, anticipating the events of Calvary, were another matter.

Jesus requested of the Father that these sufferings be allowed to pass, but such was not to be. And, resultantly,

*And being in agony, He prayed more earnestly. Then His sweat became like great drops of blood falling down to the ground.”* ([Luke 22:44](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+22.44&t=NKJV))

Then, shortly thereafter, following Jesus being delivered to Pilate by the Jewish religious leaders, the nation of Israel sank to a new low. Pilate, after interrogating Jesus, sending Him to Herod, and having Him returned by Herod, sought to release Jesus; but the Jewish religious leaders persuaded the multitude to ask for *the release of Barabbas* (an insurrectionist, robber, and murderer) *instead and insist on Jesus’ crucifixion*.

Pilate, seeing that “*he could prevail nothing*,” finally “*gave sentence that it should be as they required*.” He released Barabbas and had Jesus scourged. And following the scourging the Roman soldiers arrayed Jesus as a pseudo King, which, along with the humiliation, involved further beatings.

Then Pilate, making one last attempt to save Jesus from crucifixion, brought Him forth in the mutilated condition described in [Isaiah 52:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+52.14&t=NKJV) and presented Him to “*the chief priests and the rulers and the people*” with the words,

*Behold your King*! ([John 19:14b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.14b&t=NKJV))

But the Jewish people who were present would still have nothing to do with Christ. They cried out to Pilate, “*Away with Him, away with Him! Crucify Him!*” Then, in response to Pilate’s question: “*Shall I crucify your King?*” the chief priests climaxed the whole matter by crying out,

*We have no king but Caesar!* ([John 19:15b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.15b&t=NKJV))

Jesus was then led away to be crucified ([Matthew 27:15-31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+27.15-31&t=NKJV); [Mark 15:7-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+15.7-20&t=NKJV); [Luke 23:13-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+23.13-26&t=NKJV); [John 18:39-19:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+18.39-19.16&t=NKJV)).

It was through all of this, which preceded the Cross that Jesus not only suffered physically but spiritually as well. The Jewish religious leaders had persuaded the people to ask for the release of a notorious imprisoned criminal rather than Israel’s King; then Christ was again arrayed and mocked as a pseudo King. He had previously been arrayed, treated with contempt, and mocked in Herod’s presence; but this time, following His arrayal, Christ was not only repeatedly mocked but He was also repeatedly spat upon and beaten (*cf*. [Matthew 27:26-31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+27.26-31&t=NKJV); [Mark 15:16-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+15.16-20&t=NKJV); [Luke 23:6-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+23.6-11&t=NKJV)).

And to bring the whole matter to a close, preceding the crucifixion (where mocking and expressions of contempt continued with Christ hanging on the Cross [[Mark 15:24-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+15.24-32&t=NKJV)]), the Jewish religious leaders echoed the ultimate insult when Pilate brought Jesus forth to them. They not only rejected their true King, calling for His crucifixion, but *they pledged allegiance to a pagan Gentile king.*

(The Jewish religious leaders, through this act, placed the nation of Israel in a position diametrically opposed to the reason for the nation’s very existence. Israel had been called into existence — as God’s firstborn son — to be the ruling nation on earth, within a theocracy. Israel was to be the nation through which God would rule and bless all the Gentile nations [*cf*. [Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV); [22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV); [Exodus 4:22-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+4.22-23&t=NKJV); [19:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+19.5-6&t=NKJV); [Deuteronomy 7:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+7.6&t=NKJV)].

However, the religious leaders in Israel had placed the nation in subjection to a pagan Gentile power by rejecting their true King and, in His stead, claiming allegiance to a pagan Gentile king. Such an act not only removed the One who must reside in Israel’s midst at the time these blessings would be realized [*cf*. [Joel 2:27-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.27-32&t=NKJV); [Acts 2:16-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+2.16-21&t=NKJV); [3:14-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+3.14-15&t=NKJV), [19-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+3.19-23&t=NKJV); [7:54-56](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+7.54-56&t=NKJV)] — affixing Him to the Cross rather than seeing Him seated on the Throne — but it also placed both nations in completely opposite positions from the respective positions that they were to occupy for their well-being in God’s plans and purposes, proving detrimental to both nations [blessings withheld for both, along with further degradation for Israel].)

Then at Calvary there was both a climax and conclusion to Christ’s physical and spiritual sufferings. He had already been physically beaten to the point that those who looked upon Him were astonished, but now He must suffer something far worse. He must now suffer after an entirely different fashion. *He must now take upon Himself the sins of the world, and He must perform this act alone*.

Christ took upon Himself the sins of the world during the last three of the six hours He hung on the Cross. God caused darkness to envelop all the land, and He then turned away from His Son while redemption’s price was being paid. And this resulted in the cry from the Cross, “*My God, My God, why have you forsaken Me*” ([Matthew 27:45-46](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+27.45-46&t=NKJV))?

(Though the Father turned from the Son at this point, leaving the Son to act *alone*, the Son remained just as much fully God as He had always been and would always be; and, resultantly, it was *the blood of God* that was shed at Calvary.)

But at the end of those three hours it was all over. The Son’s work of redemption had been accomplished. God had “*laid on Him the iniquity of us all*” ([Isaiah 53:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+53.6&t=NKJV)); and the Son could then cry out, “*It is finished* [*lit*., ‘It has been finished’]” ([John 19:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.30&t=NKJV)).

And that is the way matters stand today. Because of the Son’s finished work, a finished salvation is available for fallen man. God’s Son has paid the price, and all man has to do — *all he can do* — is receive that which has already been accomplished on his behalf.

*A Barabbas* can be set free, for the *Just One* has died in his stead.

(The same perfect tense is used in the Greek text relative to both *Christ’s finished work* and *man’s salvation*. The perfect tense refers to action completed in past time, with the results of that action existing during present time in a finished state. This is the tense used in [John 19:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.30&t=NKJV), recording Christ’s cry from the Cross, “*It has been finished*”; and this is the tense used in [Ephesians 2:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.8&t=NKJV), referring to man’s salvation by grace through faith: “*For by grace you are saved* [*lit*., ‘you have been saved’] *through faith* . . . .”

Both acts involve, in their entirety, divinely finished work; the latter work [man’s salvation] is based on the former [Christ’s work at Calvary]; and insofar as the state of redeemed man is concerned, one work is just as *finished, complete*, and *secure* as the other. Refer to the author’s book, [Bible One - Salvation by Grace through Faith by Arlen Chitwood](http://bibleone.net/SGF.htm).)

Being Made Perfect

Through suffering ([Hebrews 4:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.15&t=NKJV); [5:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.7-8&t=NKJV)), Christ was brought to a position that Scripture calls, “*being made perfect*” ([Hebrews 4:9 KJV](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.9&t=KJV)), something that the writer had already stated in an earlier passage in the book ([Hebrews 2:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+2.10&t=NKJV)). This though was not perfection in the sense of the way the word is often used and understood today. Rather the word is used in this passage referring to an “end result,” “goal,” or “completeness” of that which is in view.

“*Perfect*” is the translation of the Greek word, *teleioo*, which means, “bring to an end,” “bring to its goal,” “bring to completeness.” Christ, by passing through these sufferings, as a Man, was brought into a position that He had not previously occupied.

In one sense of the word, Christ was brought into this position through learning obedience, resulting from sufferings that He experienced; but, in another sense of the word, such an act was impossible.

[Hebrews 5:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.8&t=NKJV) states that Christ learned “*obedience by the things which He suffered*.”

However, [John 7:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+7.15&t=NKJV) states that Christ possessed knowledge about certain matters, “*having never learned*” (*cf*. [John 7:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+7.16&t=NKJV)). The Greek word translated “*learned*” is the same in both verses, the word *manthano*. But, the thought behind what is meant by learning in the two verses is not the same. It can’t be.

The omniscient One has perfect knowledge apart from life’s experiences. But, on the other hand, Scripture states that the same omniscient Person learned through life’s experiences. How can one be reconciled with the other?

The learning is within the framework of Christ personally, *as a Man*, passing through the same experiences as man. He personally experienced, *as a Man*, that which man experiences. In the words of [Hebrews 4:14-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.14-15&t=NKJV) [14b],

*. . . let us hold fast our confession.*

*For we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but was in all points tempted as we are, yet without* [apart from] *sin*.

However, this still leaves unaddressed the issue of how the omniscient God, as Son, could learn obedience through suffering. But the answer to the matter is really very simple:

Christ learned through personal experience that which He already knew in the same sense that God learns through angelic “*watchers*” who report to Him at scheduled times that which He already knows (*cf*. [Daniel 4:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+4.17&t=NKJV), [23-25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+4.23-25&t=NKJV)). Or, as in the case of the cities of the plain during Abraham’s day, God came down to see for Himself that which the watchers had previously told Him. This was something that He not only knew about before the matter was revealed by the watchers but also something that He didn’t need to see in order to know if the matter was “*altogether according to the cry of it*” ([Genesis 18:20-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+18.20-21&t=NKJV)).

This is simply the way Scripture reveals God’s intervention in the affairs of man. He is, at times, revealed as learning, by personal intervention, that which He already knows.

As in the case of the cities of the plain, God is seen as personally coming down to view matters Himself before allowing the cities to be destroyed; and, in the person of His Son, *as a Man*, God has personally passed through certain experiences that man passes through, attributing to Himself the same qualities that man acquires by passing through these experiences.

And God has done this for revealed, related purposes, with one such purpose being revealed in [Hebrews 5:7-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.7-9&t=NKJV). By *learning* “*obedience by the things which He suffered*,” matters have been brought to *a goal.* Christ has become “*the Author* [‘source’] *of eternal salvation*” unto all those who, in turn, “*obey Him*,” which must, of necessity, also involve *suffering*.

It is suffering on His part and subsequent suffering on our part; and as the former resulted in learning obedience, so must the latter. As stated in [1 Peter 2:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+2.21&t=NKJV),

*. . . Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that you should follow His steps*.”

Eternal Salvation, Obedience

The word “eternal” in the English text is misleading. Those for whom Christ is the *source* of salvation (Christians) already possess eternal salvation; and, beyond that, this salvation was not acquired through obedience to Christ, as in the text. Rather, it was acquired through believing on the Lord Jesus Christ ([John 3:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.16&t=NKJV)).

Obedience to Christ, resulting from suffering, can come into view only *following* belief in Christ (resulting in the one believing coming into possession of eternal salvation), never before. Only the saved have “*passed from death to life*” and are in a position to suffer and subsequently obey. The unsaved are still “*dead in trespasses and sins*” ([John 5:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+5.24&t=NKJV); [Ephesians 2:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.1&t=NKJV)).

1) Eternal

The Greek language, from which our English versions have been translated, does not contain a word for “eternal.” A person using the Greek language thinks in the sense of “ages,” or “long periods of time”; and the way this language is normally used in the New Testament to express “eternal,” apart from textual considerations, is through the use of the Greek words *eis tous aionas ton aionon*, meaning, “to [or, ‘with respect to’] the ages of the ages” (*ref*. [Hebrews 13:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+13.21&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 4:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+4.11&t=NKJV); [Revelation 1:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+1.6&t=NKJV); [4:9-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+4.9-10&t=NKJV) for several examples of places where these words are used, translated “forever and ever” in most versions).

Another less frequently used way to express “eternal” in the Greek New Testament, apart from textual considerations, is through the use of a shortened form of the preceding — *eis tous aionas*, meaning “to [or, ‘with respect to’] the ages” (*ref*. [Romans 9:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+9.5&t=NKJV); [11:36](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+11.36&t=NKJV); [2 Corinthians 11:31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+11.31&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 13:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+13.8&t=NKJV) for several examples of places where these words are used, translated “forever” in most versions).

The word from the Greek text translated “eternal” in [Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV) is *aionios*. This is the adjective equivalent of the noun *aion*, referred to in the preceding paragraph in its plural form to express “eternal.” *Aion* means “an aeon [the word ‘aeon’ is derived from *aion*]” or “an era,” usually understood throughout the Greek New Testament as “an age.”

*Aionios*, the adjective equivalent of *aion*, is used seventy-one times in the Greek New Testament and has been indiscriminately translated “eternal” or “everlasting” in almost every instance in the various English versions. This word though should be understood about thirty of these seventy-one times in the sense of “age-lasting” rather than “eternal”; and the occurrence in [Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV) forms a case in point.

Several good examples of other places where aionios should be translated and understood as “age-lasting” are [Galatians 6:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+6.8&t=NKJV); [1 Timothy 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Timothy+6.12&t=NKJV); [Titus 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+1.2&t=NKJV); [3:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+3.7&t=NKJV). These passages have to do with running the present *race of the faith* in view of one day realizing an *inheritance in the kingdom*, which is the hope set before Christians.

On the other hand, *aionios* can be understood in the sense of “eternal” if the text (and/or context) so indicates. Several good examples of places where *aionios* should be so translated and understood are [John 3:15-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.15-16&t=NKJV), [36](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.36&t=NKJV). These passages have to do with life derived by faith in Christ because of His finished work at Calvary (*cf*. [John 3:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.14&t=NKJV)), and the only type of life that can possibly be in view is “eternal life.”

Textual considerations must always be taken into account when properly translating and understanding aionios, for this is a word which can be used to imply either “age-lasting” or “eternal”; and it is used both ways numerous times in the New Testament.

Textual considerations in [Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV) leave no room to question exactly how *aionios* should be understood and translated in this verse.  *Life during the coming age, occupying a position as co-heir with Christ in that coming day, is what the book of Hebrews is about*.

2) Suffering, Reigning

Suffering with or on behalf of Christ must precede reigning with Christ. The latter cannot be realized apart from the former. Such suffering is inseparably linked to obedience; and the text clearly states that Christ is the *source* of that future salvation “*to all them that* [presently] *obey Him*,” in the same respect that Christ is the *source* of presently possessed eternal salvation for all those who have (in the past) “*believed*” on Him.

[1 Peter 1:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.11&t=NKJV), relative to the saving of the soul ([1 Peter 1:9-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.9-10&t=NKJV)), states,

*Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ who was in them was indicating when He testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ* [*lit*., ‘the sufferings with respect to Christ’] *and the glory that would follow.*

The thought, contextually, is not at all that of Christ suffering. Rather, the thought has to do with Christians suffering with respect to Christ’s sufferings, subsequently realizing the salvation of their souls through having a part in the glory that is to follow the sufferings.

This is the underlying thought behind the whole book of 1 Peter, expressed in so many words by the writer in [1 Peter 4:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+4.12-13&t=NKJV):

*Beloved, do not think it strange concerning the fiery trial which is to try you, as though some strange thing happened to you;*

*but rejoice to the extent that you partake of Christ's sufferings, that when His glory is revealed, you may also be glad with exceeding joy.*

This is the “*eternal* [‘age-lasting’] *glory*” to which Christians have been called and in which Christians will be established after they “*have suffered a while*,” with *obedience to Christ* emanating from the sufferings ([1 Peter 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+5.10&t=NKJV)).

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Three

**From Milk to Meat**

*Called by God as High Priest “according to the order of Melchizedek,”*

*of whom we have much to say, and hard to explain, since you have become dull of hearing.*

*For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you need someone to teach you again the first principles of the oracles of God; and you have come to need milk and not solid food* [KJV: strong meat].

*For everyone who partakes only of milk is unskilled in the Word of righteousness, for he is a babe.*

*But solid food* [strong meat] *belongs to those who are of full age, that is, those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.* ([Hebrews 5:10-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10-14&t=NKJV))

In [Hebrews 5:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.1-6&t=NKJV) there is a progression in thought from the present ministry of Christ in the sanctuary (after the order of Aaron) to the future ministry of Christ when He ascends the throne (after the order of Melchizedek).

Christ’s ministry in the sanctuary occurs in heaven, He is ministering on behalf of those destined to ascend the throne with Him, and this ministry will extend throughout the present dispensation.

At the conclusion of this ministry, Christ will come forth from the sanctuary as *the great King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek*; and His co-heirs, for whom He had previously ministered in the heavenly sanctuary, will then reign as *kings and priests* with Him. Christ’s ministry, in that day, will occur from locations both *in the heavens and on earth* — in the heavens in relation to the earth (from the place where Satan and his angels presently rule) and upon the earth (from the land of Israel, among the Jewish people).

Thus, when Christ exercises the Melchizedek priesthood, He will have a dual reign. He will sit on His own throne in the heavenly Jerusalem, ruling over the earth with His co-heirs, His consort queen; and He will also sit on David’s throne in the earthly Jerusalem in the midst of His people, Israel (the nation that will look upon the Pierced One and be saved at His second advent). Occupying a dual reign of this nature, Christ will thus be *a King-Priest in both the heavenly Jerusalem and the earthly Jerusalem.*

This will be in perfect keeping with both *heavenly* and *earthly* promises associated with Abraham and his seed, first brought to light in connection with the first mention of Melchizedek in Scripture ([Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV)). Melchizedek blessed Abraham as “*possessor of heaven and earth*”; and the seed of Abraham, both heavenly and earthly, are to “*possess the gate of* [rule over] *his enemies*” ([Genesis 22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV)).

Beyond [Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV) in Scripture *(i.e.*, beyond the call of Abraham and God’s promises to Abraham), all divine blessings that mankind receives *must* flow through Abraham and his seed (through Isaac, Jacob, and Jacob’s twelve sons and their descendants). The *nation of Israel* is Abraham’s seed (through Jacob and his twelve sons). *Christ* is Abraham’s Seed (through Isaac, Jacob, Judah, and David); and *Christians*, because of their position “*in Christ*,” are likewise Abraham’s seed ([Galatians 3:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.16&t=NKJV), [18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.18&t=NKJV), [29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.29&t=NKJV)).

(Blessings of the preceding respect, through Abraham, actually go back to Shem, nine generations preceding Abraham [[Genesis 9:25-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+9.25-27&t=NKJV)]. It is through Abraham, Shem’s descendant, that God brings to fruition His previously-introduced national work in this respect.

That is, a nation emanating from the loins of Abraham, which, following *the creation in Jacob* [[Isaiah 43:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+43.1&t=NKJV)], and *the subsequent adoption* [[Romans 9:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+9.4&t=NKJV)], could be seen as *God’s firstborn son* [[Exodus 4:22-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+4.22-23&t=NKJV)], the nation in possession of *the rights of primogeniture*.)

Thus, during the coming age, Abraham’s Seed (*Christ and His co-heirs*) will rule from *a heavenly sphere*; and Abraham’s Seed (*Christ and the nation of Israel*) will rule from *an earthly sphere*. And by means of this rule, from both spheres, the Gentile nations of the earth will be blessed, in fulfillment of [Genesis 12:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.3&t=NKJV); [14:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.19&t=NKJV); [22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV).

Corresponding with the preceding, [Hebrews 5:7-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.7-9&t=NKJV) deals with a “salvation” in connection with the One who has been,

*Called by God as High Priest according to the order of Melchizedek*. ([Hebrews 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Hebrews 5:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.6&t=NKJV)).

Predating His present ministry in the heavenly sanctuary (after the order of Aaron), Christ *learned “obedience by the things that he suffered”*; and with God bringing matters to a predetermined goal in the person of His Son through this process, Christ “*became the Author* [‘source’] *of eternal salvation* [‘salvation for the age’] *to all them that obey Him*” ([Hebrews 5:8-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.8-9&t=NKJV); *ref*. previous chapter in this book, Chapter 2).

This salvation is being extended to those for whom Christ is presently ministering in the heavenly sanctuary; and this salvation, contextually, has to do with that future time when Christ exercises the Melchizedek priesthood. This is the salvation of the soul (*cf*. [Hebrews 6:19-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.19-20&t=NKJV); [10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV)), and it has to do strictly with the “*kings and priests*” who will ascend the throne with the great King-Priest in that coming day ([Revelation 4:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+4.10&t=NKJV); [5:8-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+5.8-10&t=NKJV)).

(Note in [Hebrews 5:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.6&t=NKJV) that Christ is said to be “*a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek*.” “Forever” is a translation of the Greek words *eis ton aiona*, which appear twenty-nine times in the Greek New Testament. Depending on the context, this expression can be understood either one of two ways — “with respect to the age [one age],” or “with respect to eternity [all the ages].” It is used both ways in the Greek New Testament [*cf*. [Matthew 21:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+21.19&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 1:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.23&t=NKJV)]. The word *aiona* [the word *aion* in a different case form] is the singular noun form of the adjective *aionios*, which is also used both ways in the Greek text [*ref*. Chapter 2 in this book].

The four times this expression appears in the book of Hebrews relative to Christ being “*a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek*” [[Hebrews 5:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.6&t=NKJV); [6:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.20&t=NKJV); [7:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+7.17&t=NKJV), [21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+7.21&t=NKJV)] should, contextually, be understood, as Christ being “a priest with respect to the age after the order of Melchizedek.” The reference is to *the coming age, that with which the book of Hebrews deals*.

It might help to note a plural form of this same Greek expression in [Hebrews 13:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+13.8&t=NKJV) — *eis tous aionas*, “with respect to the ages.” This verse, literally translated, would read, “Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and with respect to the ages [all the future ages, *i.e*., forever’].” Christ exercising a priesthood “*after the order of Melchizedek*” in Hebrews chapter five through seven has to do with one age, but Christ being unchangeable [for the Father and the Son are “one,” and God is unchangeable ([Malachi 3:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Malachi+3.6&t=NKJV))] has to do with *all the ages* — past, present, and future.

Christ will continue to reign beyond the Millennium, but matters as they will exist *during the Millennium* [one age] and *beyond the Millennium* [the succeeding unending ages, comprising eternity] will be quite different. Christ’s reign “*over the house of Jacob*” [[Luke 1:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+1.33&t=NKJV)], for example, is expressed in the Greek New Testament by the same words which appear in [Hebrews 13:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+13.8&t=NKJV), *eis tous aionas* [with respect to the ages]; but there will be differences between His reign “over the house of Jacob” during the Millennium and beyond the Millennium [note that this is *the natural man*, “Jacob,” not *the spiritual man*, “Israel.” The nation will thus evidently dwell on earth in natural bodies of flesh, blood, and bones throughout not only the Millennium but the eternal ages that follow as well].

During the Millennium, Christ will occupy the role of King-Priest after the order of Melchizedek, seated on His own throne in the heavenly Jerusalem and on David’s throne in the earthly Jerusalem. Conditions during that coming age will necessitate a King-Priest. There will be sin, resulting death, etc. And Christ must reign until He has “*put all things under His feet.*” “*The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death*.” And when “*all things*” have been brought under subjection, *the kingdom* will be “*delivered up*” to the Father “*that God may be all in all*” [*lit*., “*that God may be all things in all*,” *i.e.*, *that God may be all things in all of these things* ([1 Corinthians 15:24-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.24-28&t=NKJV))]. This is actually the purpose for the Messianic Era — *to rectify conditions in the one province in the kingdom of God where ruin, resulting from sin, ensued.*

Then, when “all things” have been brought under subjection to the Son, and the Son has delivered “*the kingdom*” up to the Father, conditions will be quite different. During the ages beyond the Millennium [the eternal ages] there will be “*a new heaven and a new earth*,” the New Jerusalem will be on the new earth [probably a much larger earth than presently exists, easily accommodating a city of this size as its capital (a city some 1,500 miles across and in height)], and God Himself will reside on the new earth [ruling the universe, from that time forth, from this new location rather than from the present location].

Sin and death, along with all the former associated things, will no longer exist. And it will no longer be necessary for God to have a Priest dwelling among men to represent man to God and God to man [[Revelation 21:22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+21.22&t=NKJV)]. In that day, God “*will dwell with them* [with mankind, on the new earth], *and they shall be His people, and God Himself shall be with them, and be their God*” [[Revelation 21:1ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+21.1ff&t=NKJV)].

And Christ, in that day, will continue to reign in a kingly position [which will be of a universal nature rather than restricted to this earth, as during the Millennium]. He will be seated on “*the throne of God and of the Lamb* [a throne from which universal rule will emanate]” [[Revelation 22:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+22.1&t=NKJV), [3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+22.3&t=NKJV)], others will continue to occupy the throne with Him [[Revelation 21:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+21.5&t=NKJV)], and Christ will also continue to occupy “*the throne of His father David*” [[Luke 1:32-33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+1.32-33&t=NKJV)].)

In [Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV), the writer moves into a section of the book that has to do with spiritual growth, from immaturity to maturity. The broader picture — moving beyond the Millennium — is really not what the writer had in mind though. Rather, he concerns himself with the Messianic Era, not with the eternal ages beyond. The broader picture has been presented only to show that Christ’s ministry “*after the order of Melchizedek*” is a ministry having to do with activity during *one age alone*, activity during *the Messianic Era*.

The writer of Hebrews, leading into his statements in [Hebrews 5:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11ff&t=NKJV), had called attention to a progression in God’s economy *from Christ’s present ministry* in the heavenly sanctuary (after the order of Aaron) *to His future ministry* (after the order of Melchizedek), crowned and seated on His own throne in the heavens and on David’s throne on earth ([Hebrews 5:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.1-6&t=NKJV)).

Following this, the writer called attention to a salvation awaiting those presently obeying Christ ([Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV)); and this salvation, contextually, is to be realized during the coming age when Christ exercises the Melchizedek priesthood ([Hebrews 5:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.6&t=NKJV), [10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10&t=NKJV)). It is to be realized *by* Christ’s co-heirs *through/by* their ascending the throne with Him (His own throne in the heavens, not David’s throne on earth).

It is this whole line of thought — centering on Melchizedek ([Hebrews 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10&t=NKJV)) — which the writer had in mind when he stated,

*Of whom we have much to say, and hard to explain, since you have become dull of hearing.* ([Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV))

The writer wanted to say many things about that future day when Christ would be *the great King-Priest “after the order of Melchizedek,”* with others occupying positions as kings and priests alongside Him.

But, there was a problem . . . .

Many Things To Say

The writer of Hebrews could not just come out and begin relating to his readers various truths about Christ’s coming rule and reign over the earth “*after the order of Melchizedek*.” *This is what he wanted to do, but such was not possible; the recipients of this epistle lacked the necessary background in their spiritual growth to comprehend these truths* ([Hebrews 5:11-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11-14&t=NKJV)).

Though they were on the foundation, which is Christ ([1 Corinthians 3:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+3.11&t=NKJV)), they had not built upon this foundation after a fashion that would allow them to understand things about Christ drawn from type-antitype teachings concerning Melchizedek.

1) Hard to Explain

The things pertaining to Christ’s coming ministry “*after the order of Melchizedek*” were things “*hard to explain*.” That is, these things were “difficult to be explained.” And, to be able to grasp these things at all, it was absolutely necessary for a person to have grown enough spiritually that he could easily partake of solid food.

Things surrounding the antitype of the Melchizedek priesthood were not simply *meat* or *solid food per se*, but these things were said to be *strong meat*, *food not easily digested and assimilated* ([Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.14&t=NKJV) [there is a qualifying word used only here in the Greek text in connection with the word for “food” — *stereos*, meaning, “strong,” “solid,” “firm”]). And these were, accordingly, not things for those still on the *milk* of the Word, which presented a problem for the writer of Hebrews.

Those to whom he was writing were still on milk and, correspondingly, “*unskillful in the Word of righteousness*.” And not only did they need to be weaned from the milk but they also needed to be able to partake of solid food, after at least some fashion, before they could go on into and understand things surrounding the “strong meat” associated with Christ’s coming reign as *King-Priest* “*after the order of Melchizedek*.”

At the beginning of the Christian life a person can only partake of what Scripture calls, the “*sincere* [unadulterated, pure] *milk of the Word*” (*cf*. [Hebrews 5:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12-13&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 2:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+2.2&t=NKJV)). Milk is for “newborn babes,” whether in the spiritual or physical realm. And, as in the physical realm where individuals grow physically and leave the milk for solid food, so must it be in the spiritual realm to assure proper growth. A “newborn babe” is to begin on milk, but he is not to remain on milk indefinitely. He is to grow spiritually; and through this growth he is to progressively, in what could only be considered *a natural sense within this growth*, gradually leave the milk and, in its place, partake of solid food.

The solid food that he first begins to partake of is more easily digested and assimilated than solid food that he may partake of after additional growth. Growth is always progressive, and the object of growth is always the same. Whether in the physical or spiritual, progressive proper growth always leads toward the same goal. It always leads toward maturity, adulthood.

The whole panoramic picture of growth after this fashion is set forth in spiritual lessons drawn from events occurring during the six days of [Genesis 1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1&t=NKJV); and *the purpose for this growth is intimately connected with that which occurred during the seventh day in* [*Genesis 2*](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+2&t=NKJV)*.*

Events occurring during the first three days set forth *divisions*. Viewing the antitype, events occurring during the first day pertain to man’s presently possessed eternal salvation, wherein a division is established between the soul and the spirit (*cf*. [Genesis 1:3-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.3-4&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 4:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.12&t=NKJV)). Then, events occurring on days two and three (a division of waters from waters, the land from the water, etc.) picture the newborn babe in Christ learning divisions, distinctions in the Word — *i.e*., learning the basics — elementary teachings *that would have to do essentially with milk rather than solid food.*

It is only when one reaches that point in his spiritual growth depicted by events on days four through six *that solid food of any real substance comes into the picture*. At this point in his understanding of Scripture he can begin to sink deep shafts down into the Word and mine its treasures.

He can begin to scale the heights or the depths in his spiritual understanding, as the birds are able to ascend into the heavens (day four), or as the marine creatures are able to plunge to the depths of the sea (day five); or he can begin to roam through the Word with ease in his spiritual understanding, as the giant land creatures are able to easily roam the earth (day six).

And all of this is for *a purpose, which has to do with man, on the seventh day, realizing the reason for his existence: “. . . let them have dominion.”*

It has to do with man, on the seventh day (the seventh Millennium, the earth’s coming Sabbath, the Messianic Era), *being placed in a position to exercise dominion with “the second Man,” “the last Adam”* (*cf*. [Genesis 1:26-2:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.26-2.3&t=NKJV); [1 Corinthians 15:45](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.45&t=NKJV), [47](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.47&t=NKJV); [Romans 11:29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+11.29&t=NKJV)).

It has to do with the same thing that the writer of Hebrews had in mind when he referred to things that were “*hard to explain* [‘difficult to understand’]” ([Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV)). He was writing to individuals who were, in their spiritual understanding, still in that period typified by events on days two and three in [Genesis 1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1&t=NKJV).

And this whole matter was not something that could be discussed with individuals still on the Milk of the Word. This was *strong meat*, which, insofar as one’s spiritual growth and understanding were concerned, could fit only within the framework of that depicted by events on days four through six, for it had to do with *the seventh day*.

(For a detailed discussion of [Genesis 1:1-2:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.1-2.3&t=NKJV), as these verses pertain to the Christian life [birth, maturity, purpose] within a type-antitype framework, see the author’s book, [Bible One - From Egypt to Canaan by Arlen Chitwood](http://www.bibleone.net/E2C.htm), Chapters 5-8.)

2) Dull of Hearing

The word, “*dull*” in [Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV) is the translation of a Greek word (*nothros*) that means, “lazy” or “careless.” This is the same word also appearing in [Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV), the only other occurrence of this word in the New Testament:

*That you do not become sluggish* [*nothros*, ‘lazy,’ ‘careless’], *but imitate those who through faith and patience inherit the promises*.

The word *nothros*, as it is used in [Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV), has to do with hearing and receiving the Word of God. Those addressed had become “lazy,” “careless” in this respect. Thus, the thought of *sluggish in hearing* or *hard of hearing* because of “laziness” or “carelessness” would best describe what is meant by the use of *nothros* in this section of Scripture.

Such an attitude toward the Word on their part would, in turn, have negative ramifications in two interrelated realms:

1) *Their present spiritual growth*.

2) *The “end* [goal]” *of their faith, the salvation of their souls* ([James 1:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+1.21&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 1:4-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.4-5&t=NKJV), [9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.9&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Hebrews 6:11-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.11-12&t=NKJV), [19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.19&t=NKJV); [10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV)).

Then a verb tense used in the Greek text shows that the individuals being addressed in [Hebrews 5:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11ff&t=NKJV) had not always been in this spiritual condition. Rather, *they had become* this way. The latter part of the verse should literally read,

. . . *you have become sluggish in hearing* [because of your carelessness, laziness (as it pertains to the reception of the Word of God and your spiritual growth)].

The same thought (their having become this way) is set forth in the latter part of [Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV), which should literally read,

*. . . you have become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat* (solid food).

Thus, though the text deals with spiritual babes “*in Christ*,” it does not deal with spiritual babes who had never made a concerted effort to grow spiritually. Rather, the text deals with Christians who, at one time, were receiving the Word and growing in a spiritual manner. *But something happened, which is very common in Christian circles today*. They had *become* “lazy” and “careless” in the spiritual realm of their lives; and, correspondingly, they had *become* “sluggish in hearing” the Word.

They had been saved long enough that they should, themselves, have been teaching the Word. But such was not the case at all. Rather, because of the spiritual condition in which *they had become*, they needed someone to take the Word and begin at the very basics of the Christian faith, teaching them once again things that they had previously been taught ([Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV)).

When for the Time

The whole area of spiritual growth from immaturity unto maturity, as it is presented in Hebrews chapters five and six, needs to be understood contextually. Beginning on milk, being weaned from the milk, and partaking of solid food is not just moving from something relatively simple to something more complex in biblical doctrine. Rather, proper spiritual growth involves moving from what could be termed *the letter* of the matter to *the spirit* of the matter (*cf*. [2 Corinthians 3:6-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+3.6-18&t=NKJV)).

When Christ, following His resurrection, instructed the two disciples on the road to Emmaus, He followed a certain procedure. Christ began “*at Moses and all the Prophets*”; and, using the writings of *Moses and all the Prophets*, “*He expounded to them in all the Scriptures the things concerning Himself*.” And by so doing, He showed these disciples, from the Old Testament Scriptures, a dual picture of Himself. He showed them both *the sufferings* that He had just endured and *His glory* that would one day be revealed ([Luke 24:25-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.25-27&t=NKJV)).

How did Christ do this? How did He go to the Old Testament Scriptures and draw spiritual truths from these Scriptures that not only dealt with His past sufferings and future glory but that also resulted in the eyes of these two disciples being opened?

The answer is very simple. Christ first went to the historic accounts in the writings of Moses, and then He went to the writings of other Prophets (the writings of the other Prophets could have been both historic accounts and/or prophetic accounts). And using these Scriptures to arrive at teachings of this nature, Christ could only have followed one procedure: He could only have dealt first with the letter of Old Testament revelation and then with *the spirit* of this revelation.

In this respect, to illustrate a basic distinction between “milk” and “meat” (solid food), *the letter* would have to do with the historicity of the account itself. It would have to do with simply viewing the account as it is presented in Scripture from a literal, historic perspective. And this is where one must begin, for no progress in spiritual growth can possibly be made until one first learns and understands basic things about that which is stated in *the letter* of the Word.

Then *the spirit* has to do with going beyond the simple historic account within the framework of the manner in which Scripture has been structured. God has interwoven within the historic account an inexhaustible wealth of spiritual truth. All Old Testament history is fraught with types and meaning, which, after some fashion, reflect on the person and work of Christ in His three-fold office. Note in [Luke 24:27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.27&t=NKJV) — “. . . *in all the Scriptures the things concerning Himself*” (*cf*. [1 Corinthians 10:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+10.6&t=NKJV), [11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+10.11&t=NKJV)).

(One could take a lesson concerning proper biblical interpretation from Stephen’s address to the Jewish religious leaders in [Acts 7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+7&t=NKJV). Stephen began by calling attention to particular historic accounts in the Old Testament. Then, account by account [[Acts 7:2ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+7.2ff&t=NKJV)], once he had these Jewish religious leaders’ attention properly focused on *the letter* of the matter, he drew *spiritual lessons* from the historic accounts. And, though the lessons were relatively simple, those whom he addressed got the message because *Stephen opened the Scriptures to them after the fashion in which they had been written, moving from type to antitype*.

And because Stephen opened the Scriptures to their understanding in this respect, *allowing them to understand the proclaimed message, “they gnashed at him with their teeth”* [an Eastern expression showing deep contempt (which not only showed their attitude toward Stephen but toward the proclaimed Word itself)].

Note that which *a proper proclamation of the Word* had done — they had been “*cut to the heart,*” *resulting in their action* [[Acts 7:54](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+7.54&t=NKJV)].

These religious leaders did *exactly the same thing* to Stephen that they had previously done to Christ, and for the same reason. In a vain effort to do away with the whole of the matter, they killed Stephen [[Acts 7:57-60](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+7.57-60&t=NKJV)].

And, relative to the preceding, the one daring to do this in Christian circles today might want to keep one thing in mind:

*The religious leaders today, as the religious leaders during Stephen’s day, or during the previous time when Christ was upon earth, are not going to like that which the Word really has to say when the Word has been proclaimed after the manner in which it has been recorded and structured*.)

The preceding is the evident manner of progression from milk to meat (solid food) in [Hebrews 5:10ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10ff&t=NKJV). First, attention is called to Melchizedek from the Old Testament Scriptures. In this respect there is the brief historic account in [Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV). Then there is the account of Messiah’s coming reign over the earth in [Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV), which draws from the type in Genesis. And this is the extent of that which is directly stated about Melchizedek in the Old Testament.

The writer of Hebrews though went far beyond a reference to the historic account in Genesis and the use of this account in the Psalms when he stated that he had “*many things*” which he would like to relate concerning Melchizedek.

*First*, he had to have in mind understanding things about numerous other Old Testament Scriptures, for properly understanding the things surrounding Melchizedek would, of necessity, be contingent on understanding numerous other parts of the Old Testament. Then, *second*, the writer had to have in mind going *beyond the letter* within one’s understanding. And from that which is revealed in Hebrews chapter five, it is evident that going *beyond the letter* had to do with moving into the type-antitype relationship involved in the Melchizedek priesthood.

In other words, there are two corresponding things that one must do in order to properly understand the various things about Christ’s coming reign over the earth as the great King-Priest “*after the order of Melchizedek*”:

1) He must relate that which is taught in [Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV) and [Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV) to Old Testament revelation as a whole.

2) He must study the matter after the fashion in which the Old Testament has been structured, moving, in this respect, from type to antitype.

The account in Genesis chapter fourteen, in reality, comprises the heart of the whole matter. This account, in the antitype, deals with that coming day when Christ, as *the great King-Priest*, will bless the descendants of Abraham (both heavenly and earthly); and these blessings will, in turn, flow out through the seed of Abraham to the Gentile nations of the earth.  *In this respect, the whole account is fraught with meaning, which the writer of Hebrews called “solid food”* (KJV: “strong meat”).

1) The Word of the Kingdom

Another feature about proper Christian growth in its true New Testament sense is the fact that solid food (meat) appears in passages having to do with *Christ’s return and Christian accountability in relation to His return*. This can be seen quite graphically in two passages of Scripture — the text under discussion in [Hebrews 5:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11ff&t=NKJV) and the account of the Householder and His servant in [Matthew 24:45-51](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.45-51&t=NKJV). And both are companion passages.

In [Matthew 24:45-51](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.45-51&t=NKJV), the command of the Householder to the servant placed over His house was to give those in the house “*solid food* (KJV: meat [same word as in [Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV)]) *in due season*” ([Matthew 24:45](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.45&t=NKJV)). And, textually, “*solid food*” has to do with a spiritual diet that will properly prepare the recipients for the Householder’s return. Thus, “solid food,” as distinguished from “milk” in this passage and in [Hebrews 5:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11ff&t=NKJV), has to do with the same thing. It has to do with the things surrounding Christ’s return, the coming kingdom, and the place that will be occupied by both the great *King-Priest* and the *kings and priests* in that coming day.

*The purpose for the entire present dispensation has to do with the coming kingdom. The call is presently going forth concerning proffered positions as co-heirs with Christ during the coming age, and the present dispensation covers that period of time when fruit relating to the kingdom will be brought forth by those destined to comprise the co-heirs.*

The faithful servant, dispensing “*solid food* (meat) *in due season*,” teaches those placed under his care *about the Lord’s return and proffered positions in the kingdom, with a view to fruit bearing by both the one proclaiming the Word and the ones hearing the Word*. Then, at the time of the Lord’s return, fruit will be in evidence; and not only will the faithful servant be positioned as “*ruler* [co-heir with Christ in the kingdom],” but through his previous ministry in the house others will be brought into this position as well.

*Should the servant become unfaithful though, the opposite will be true*. He will not teach those placed under his care about the Lord’s return and proffered positions in the kingdom. Then, at the time of the Lord’s return, *there will be no fruit*; and not only will the unfaithful servant face *severe chastisement*, but those who had been placed under his care, failing to bring forth fruit (as a direct result of the unfaithful servant’s ministry), will find themselves *in similar straits*.

In this respect, *an awesome responsibility* falls on the shoulders of those whom the Lord has placed in positions of household responsibility to dispense “*solid food* (meat) *in due season*,” *for faithfulness or unfaithfulness in properly carrying out their calling will have far-reaching ramifications, affecting not only them personally but others as well. By a proper response to their calling, the salvation of not only their souls* (lives) *will be realized but the souls* (lives) *of others as well. But through an improper response, the opposite will be true.*

2) Beyond the Veil

The strict *letter of the Word*, apart from *the spirit of the same Word*, could, in a sense, be likened to an intrinsic view of the strict letter of the Law given to Israel through Moses. In the words of Scripture, pertaining to the latter, “*the letter kills* . . . .” And insofar as the understanding and interpretation of Scripture are concerned, there would be no difference in applying the same words to the former should *the spirit* be removed, for it is *the spirit alone* that “*gives life*” ([2 Corinthians 3:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+3.6&t=NKJV)).

Because Israel viewed matters from *the letter alone*, the minds of the Jewish people were blinded, there was a veil over their eyes, and “*until this day the same veil remains unlifted in the reading of the Old Testament* [‘old covenant’].”

But, there was/is a solution. *The veil could/can be “done away in Christ”* ([2 Corinthians 3:14-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+3.14-16&t=NKJV)). *And such was/is accomplished through simply looking beyond the letter.*

That is exactly what occurred when Christ dealt with the two disciples on the road to Emmaus following His resurrection. He opened the Old Testament Scriptures to their understanding. That is, He carried them beyond *the letter to the spirit.*

Through looking beyond the letter in the Old Testament Scriptures, when they were later breaking bread, they saw their Messiah. They then *turned to the Lord*, *the veil was removed, and their eyes were opened* (*cf*. [Luke 24:25-31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.25-31&t=NKJV); [2 Corinthians 3:14-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+3.14-16&t=NKJV)).

And therein is Jewish evangelism presented in its true biblical form. The evangel (the bearer of “good news”) must present the Jewish Messiah to the Jewish people *from their own Old Testament Scriptures*, through more than the letter. He must move beyond *the letter to the spirit*.

Then, beyond the present day and time, the account in Luke chapter twenty-four forms a type of Israel’s future salvation. The nation will one day *turn their attention to the Lord, the veil will be removed, and the eyes of the Jewish people will be opened*; and this will be the direct result of Messiah Himself, in their midst at the time of His return, opening the Old Testament Scriptures to their understanding.

And therein as well lies the simple secret that will allow anyone to understand the God-breathed Word given to man. *Study Scripture after the fashion in which it was written*. Know *the letter*, but don’t stop there. Rather, look beyond *the letter* to *the spirit*, for this Word, unlike any other writing, is “*spiritually discerned*” (*cf*. [John 16:12-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+16.12-15&t=NKJV); [1 Corinthians 2:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+2.14&t=NKJV)).

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Four

**Leaving the Principles**

*Therefore, leaving the discussion of the elementary principles of Christ, let us go on to perfection, not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God,*

*of the doctrine of baptisms, of laying on of hands, of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment.*

*And this we will do, if God permit* ([Hebrews 6:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-3&t=NKJV)).

[Hebrews 6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6&t=NKJV) continues the thought from [Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV) having to do with Christians who had become lazy and careless in their spiritual lives, their spiritual growth ([Hebrews 6:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.11&t=NKJV)). They had been saved for a sufficient length of time that *they should have been at a mature enough stage in their spiritual growth to be able to teach others*. But such was not the case at all. Instead, *they were still immature babes in Christ who needed to be taught themselves* ([Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV)).

Actually, according to the text, they had gone backwards in their spiritual growth. They, at one time, had been taught the elementary truths of the Word. But, because of the lazy and careless manner in which they had been conducting their spiritual lives, they had “*come to need milk and not solid food* [KJV: strong meat]”; they were back at that point where they needed someone *to again teach them “the first principles of the oracles of God.”*

(Note that proper spiritual living and growth is inseparably connected with and dependent on one thing: *a proper diet of spiritual food that comes from one source alone — from the Word*.

The reason for this is seen in *the very nature of the Word*. The Word is inseparably identified with both *the Father and His Son — “the Word was God,” “the Word became flesh”* [[John 1:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.1-2&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.14&t=NKJV)]. The Word became flesh in the person of God’s Son, who was/is God manifested in the flesh.

Accordingly, anything connected with *true spirituality* [spiritual living, growth] *cannot exist apart from the Word*, for, existing apart from the Word would be synonymous with existing apart from the Father and His Son [along with the Holy Spirit].

Thus, it is either *the Word* or *nothing*. No middle ground exists.)

The writer of Hebrews wanted to discuss things pertaining to the Melchizedek priesthood with those to whom he was writing, but dealing with them on this basis was completely out of the question. Things surrounding the Melchizedek priesthood had to do with the “*solid food* [strong meat]” of the Word, which could be understood only by those who were “*of full age* [*i.e*., by mature Christians who had left the milk and had grown to adulthood in spiritual matters through a progressive intake, digestion, and assimilation of solid spiritual food.

These Christians still on milk, as *every Christian “who partakes only of milk,”* were “*unskillful in the Word of righteousness*.” Their spiritual perception of matters was of such an immature nature — *i.e.*, their spiritual senses were so insufficiently developed — that distinguishing between that which was correct and that which was incorrect in spiritual matters could only have presented a real problem for them (*cf*. [Hebrews 6:13-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.13-14&t=NKJV)).

*One must know and understand the Word of God, else a normal Christian life — one based on that which is taught in the Word — can never follow*. Thus, Hebrews chapter six begins with an exhortation to those in chapter five. They were exhorted to leave the elementary teachings of the Word and begin building upon the foundation, with *a view to spiritual maturity* ([Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV)).

Within the overall scope of that which is revealed in Hebrews chapters five through seven, the first two verses in chapter six form *a connective*. These two verses, within the complete text, might be thought of as being similar to a conjunction in a sentence, for they *connect* that which has preceded with that which is about to follow.

Then, following the exhortation to go on to maturity, there is the statement,

*And this we will do* [we will go on unto maturity] *if God permits* [if God permits us to go on to maturity]. ([Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV))

The heart of the third of the five major warnings in Hebrews appears next ([Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV)).

Then the writer uses an illustration pertaining to the warning, drawn from nature ([Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV)).

Next he deals with the “*hope*” that Christians possess and the “*salvation*” set before Christians, associated with this hope ([Hebrews 6:9-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.9-19&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Titus 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+1.2&t=NKJV); [2:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+2.13&t=NKJV); [3:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+3.7&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 3:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+3.15&t=NKJV)).

Then he moves full-circle back to the subject of Melchizedek, which had been introduced at the beginning of this section in chapter five ([Hebrews 6:20-7:1ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.20-7.1ff&t=NKJV)).

The Foundation and Beyond

[Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV) enumerates six different realms pertaining to a panorama of biblical doctrine. And the things listed in these two verses must be understood contextually. The context has to do with *Christian maturity, for a revealed purpose*; and that’s exactly where one is led when moving through the six different enumerated areas of biblical doctrine that are set forth in these opening two verses of the sixth chapter.

The six realms listed are introduced by the words,

*Therefore, leaving the discussion of the elementary principles of Christ, let us go on to perfection* [maturity]. ([Hebrews 6:1a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1a&t=NKJV))

The “*principles*” are the “*first principles*” from verse twelve of the preceding chapter ([Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV)). These principles have to do with milk rather than solid food, and they are connected with the six enumerated areas of doctrine that immediately follow.

However, the six enumerated areas are not, themselves, part of the foundation. Rather, it is *elementary teachings* connected with these six areas of doctrine that have to do with the foundation. And, going beyond that, teachings connected with these same six areas can move far beyond foundational teachings. Such teachings can and do — they must, of necessity — move into the realm of the “*solid food*” referred to in the previous chapter.

There is both *the letter* and *the spirit* of the matter, and this would apply to all six of the areas of doctrine listed in [Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV). *The letter* is one thing, but moving out into *the spirit*, — moving beyond *the letter* into *the spirit* in biblical teaching — is something entirely different (*ref*. Chapter 3 of this book [*cf*. [2 Corinthians 3:6-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+3.6-18&t=NKJV)]). And this is exactly what those in [Hebrews 5:11-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11-14&t=NKJV) were exhorted to do in [Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV).

They were exhorted to leave the foundational teachings (teachings that would begin with *the letter*) and build upon the foundation (which would, of necessity, have to pertain to things beyond *the letter*, *i.e*., to *the spirit*). And, whether *letter* or *spirit*, the various teachings would still be drawn from the six enumerated areas of biblical doctrine.

These six enumerated areas logically fall into three categories, with an interrelated set in each category. The Spirit of God has listed them after the fashion in which they appear, in a specific order, for evident, particular reasons; and they should be studied with this overall thought in view, which fits the contextual subject matter perfectly.

Viewing the six areas of biblical doctrine after this fashion, there would be,

1) “*repentance from dead works*,” coupled with “*faith toward God*” ([Hebrews 6:1b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1b&t=NKJV)).

2) “*doctrine of baptisms*,” coupled with a “*laying on of hands*” ([Hebrews 6:2a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.2a&t=NKJV)).

3) “*resurrection of the dead*,” coupled with “*eternal judgment*” ([Hebrews 6:2b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.2b&t=NKJV)).

And, as will be demonstrated, moving progressively and orderly through the various biblical doctrines in view — seeing and understanding *the letter* and then *the spirit* of the matter — will result in a progressive orderly growth toward maturity.

1) The beginning point concerns *repentance and faith*.

2) The middle point has to do with *cleansing and identification*.

3) The terminal point centers on teachings concerning *the end or goal of that which has preceded*.

And within these three categories one will find a complete panorama of biblical truth, beginning with *the milk of the Word* and terminating with *the solid food/strong meat of the Word*.

1) Repentance, Faith

The first thing listed is “*repentance from dead works*”; but this cannot be separated from the second thing listed, which is “*faith toward God*.” The term “*dead works*” would pertain to *the works of a believer performed apart from faith*. Works, in order to be viewed as other than “*dead works*,” must emanate *out of faith* ([James 2:14ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.14ff&t=NKJV)).

There must first be “faith toward God”; only then can works pleasing and acceptable to God follow, for, without faith, “it is impossible to please Him” ([Hebrews 11:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11.6&t=NKJV)).

There can be *no acceptable works* on the part of an unbeliever, for he cannot exercise “*faith toward God*” (he must first believe on the Son; only then will he find himself in a position to exercise faith toward the Father).

The believer, on the other hand, is in a position to exercise “*faith toward God*,” though he may or may not do so.

Should he do so, he can perform *works acceptable and pleasing to God in his life* (for faith will exist, from which such works can emanate); but should he not do so, he can no more perform works of this nature than the unbeliever can (for faith will not exist; and, resultantly, there can only be “*dead works*”).

The unbeliever remains “*dead in trespasses and sins*,” while the believer has “*passed from death to life*” ([John 5:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+5.24&t=NKJV); [Ephesians 2:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.1&t=NKJV)). Consequently, the believer, unlike the unbeliever, is in a position to perform acceptable works emanating out of faith (faithfulness). But, as previously stated, he may or may not perform works of this nature, for he may or may not exercise “*faith toward God*.”

The term “*repentance*” has to do with *a change of mind*. Essentially, looking at the matter from the other end, the Christian, bringing forth “*dead works*,” is to *change his mind* relative to “*faith toward God.*” His unfaithfulness has resulted in the “*dead works*”; and he is to *change his mind* about the matter and exercise “*faith*,” with a view to other than “*dead works*” following.

How does a person exercise “*faith toward God*”?

According to [Romans 10:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+10.17&t=NKJV),

*. . . faith comes by* [out of] *hearing, and hearing by* [through] *the Word of God*.”

The words “faith” and “believe” are the same in the Greek text. The former is a noun and the latter a verb. They both mean the same thing. That’s why “believe” (the verb) can be used in [John 3:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.16&t=NKJV) (a participle, formed from the verb, in the Greek text) and “faith” (the noun) can be used in [Ephesians 2:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.8&t=NKJV), referring to the same thing.

“Faith” is simply *believing God*, which will result in the person governing his life and actions accordingly.

For the unsaved, it is simply placing one’s trust, reliance in God’s Son. He is the Savior, He has paid the price that God required, and a person places their trust in Him for salvation. *It’s that simple*.

Then once the person has been saved, once he has passed “*from death to life,*” he is to exercise “*faith toward God*.” And a person does that simply through putting his trust, reliance in that which God has to say in His Word.

Thus, it is easy to understand why the unsaved cannot exercise “*faith toward God,*” for, not having “*passed from death to life*,” they have no spiritual capacity for such understanding. They do not have a saved human spirit into which the Word of God can be received; nor do they possess the indwelling Holy Spirit to take this Word and lead them “*into all truth*” ([John 16:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+16.13&t=NKJV)). They, within the scope of their ability to comprehend and understand the Word of God, can only look upon that which God has to say as “foolishness” ([1 Corinthians 2:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+2.14&t=NKJV)).

[James 2:14-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.14-26&t=NKJV) is a central section on “faith and works” in Scripture. And, within this section, the subject of works emanating out of faithfulness has to do with *the saving of the soul* (*cf*. [James 1:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+1.21&t=NKJV); [2:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.14&t=NKJV)). *The saving of the soul,* in turn, has to do, not with “*milk*,” but with “*solid food* [strong meat].” It has to do with the things surrounding the antitype of Melchizedek from [Genesis 14:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18&t=NKJV), [19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.19&t=NKJV), dealt with in Hebrews chapters five through seven.

(For more information on [James 2:14-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.14-26&t=NKJV), refer to the author’s book, [Salvation of the Soul BOOK](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/salvation-of-the-soul.php), Chapter 5, in this site.)

Thus, in this respect, “*repentance from dead works*” and “*faith toward God*,” the first of the three categories listed in [Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV), carries one through the entirety of the Christian experience — *from immaturity to maturity.* “Repentance” and “faith” are fundamental and primary. And viewing these together is, so to speak, where one *must* begin. Consequently, the two are listed first among the three categories.

But a Christian in the race of the faith is not to remain on the starting blocks ([Hebrews 12:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.1-2&t=NKJV); *cf*. [1 Corinthians 9:24-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+9.24-27&t=NKJV); [1 Timothy 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Timothy+6.12&t=NKJV); [2 Timothy 4:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Timothy+4.7-8&t=NKJV)). He, rather, is to move forward in the race, *always progressing steadily toward the goal*. And though “repentance” and “faith” are fundamental and primary, they are associated just as much with *the end* as they are with *the beginning*.

Thus, insofar as a person going on to maturity is concerned, “repentance” and “faith” have just as much to do with *the solid food/strong meat of the Word* as they do with *the milk of the Word*. It is, as in the words of [Romans 1:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+1.17&t=NKJV),

*. . . from faith to faith* [from the beginning to the end — it is *all* of “faith”]: *as it is written, the just shall live by faith”* (*cf.* [Habakkuk 2:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Habakkuk+2.4&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV); [11:1ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11.1ff&t=NKJV)).

2) Baptisms, Laying on of Hands

The word “baptisms” is, in the Greek text as in the English text, *plural* in its usage in [Hebrews 6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.2&t=NKJV); and teachings surrounding that which is in view relative to baptisms, along with teachings surrounding that which is in view relative to the laying on of hands, is taken from teachings surrounding God’s dealings with the Israelites in the Old Testament Scriptures.

The word “baptism,” transliterated from the Greek word, *baptizo*, simply means *to dip* or *to immerse*. And translating the word as “washing” (with the thought of dipping or immersing [in water] in mind [*ref*. NASB]) would perhaps best convey, to the English reader, that which the writer of Hebrews had in mind.

And to understand what is meant by “washings” in [Hebrews 6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.2&t=NKJV), one must refer back to the rituals performed within the ranks of the Levitical priests who carried on a ministry at the tabernacle on behalf of the people of Israel. The priests underwent *a complete washing, bathing of their bodies, upon their entrance into the priesthood*. This was something that occurred once, *never to be repeated*. However, as they subsequently ministered on behalf of the people, there were *continual, repeated washings of parts of their bodies — their hands and feet*, which repeatedly became soiled in the course of their ministry.

These washings occurred at the laver in the courtyard, which lay between the brazen altar and the Holy Place ([Exodus 29:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+29.4&t=NKJV); [30:18-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+30.18-21&t=NKJV); [40:12-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+40.12-15&t=NKJV), [30-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+40.30-32&t=NKJV)).

The typology in view, from this Old Testament account, is where Christ drew His teachings surrounding complete and partial washings when He washed the disciples’ feet in [John 13:2-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+13.2-20&t=NKJV). Christ, relative to that which He was doing, used two different words for “wash” when dealing with Peter — *louo* and *nipto*.

He used *louo* relative to washing “the complete body” and *nipto* relative to washing “a part of the body.” And, insofar as Peter and the other disciples were concerned, the former had already been performed (never to be repeated), but the latter needed to be performed repeatedly. And the One doing the cleansing would, of necessity, have to provide this service on a continuous basis.

That is, the disciples had been washed completely once (illustrated by Christ’s use of *louo*). They had been saved, justified. But, following this complete washing, because of their coming in contact with the defilement of the world in which they lived, there was a need for subsequent partial washings (illustrated by Christ’s use of *nipto*).

The need for partial washings would parallel the defilement experienced by contact with the world. The disciples were in continuous contact with a world which lay “*under the sway of the wicked one*” [*lit*., ‘in the wicked one’ (in Satan, the incumbent ruler)]” ([1 John 5:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+5.19&t=NKJV)). And, because of their contact with the world after this fashion, there would be no possible way that they could keep from becoming defiled at numerous, various times ([1 John 1:8-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+1.8-10&t=NKJV)). Consequently, there would be a need for cleansing from such contact on a continuous basis.

Christians are New Testament priests, who have been washed completely once — at the time of justification. But, because of continuous contact with the surrounding world, defilement can and does occur. And when such defilement occurs, the defiled person is to avail himself of provided cleansing, a partial washing.

This is what the opening part of the book of 1 John is about ([1 John 1:3-2:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+1.3-2.2&t=NKJV)). Christ, throughout the present dispensation, continuously occupies the office of High Priest in the heavenly sanctuary on behalf of Christians ([1 John 2:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+2.1-2&t=NKJV)).

And, with Christ’s high priestly ministry in view, *a present cleansing* is provided for those who have, in *the past*, been cleansed (in the antitype of activity surrounding the brazen altar); and this present cleansing is seen in the antitype of subsequent activity occurring at the brazen laver; or, as previously shown, both past and present cleansings for Christians are seen in an initial complete washing of the body and subsequent washings of the hands and feet of the Levitical priests.

Note the preceding as it is presented in I John:

*If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness* [if we say that we have fellowship with Him but have failed to avail ourselves of cleansing through the use of the water in the laver in the courtyard, leaving us in the darkness outside the Holy Place (*with its light and bread* — the “*candlestick*” and “*shewbread*”)], *we lie, and do not practice the truth*. ([John 1:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.6&t=NKJV))

However,

. . . *if we walk in the light, as He is in the light* [if we avail ourselves of cleansing through the use of the water in the laver, allowing admittance to the Holy Place, with *its light and bread*], *we have fellowship with one another* . . . . ([John 1:7a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.7a&t=NKJV))

The preceding is viewing the matter more from the framework of the type. Now, note the move from type to antitype.

The latter part of verse seven ([John 1:7b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.7b&t=NKJV)) goes on to state,

. . . *and the blood of Jesus Christ His* [God’s] *Son cleanses us from all sin*.

Cleansing provided at the laver forms the type, and cleansing provided by “*the blood of Jesus Christ,*” which is on the mercy seat of the heavenly tabernacle, forms the antitype. Our cleansing today thus comes, not through the water in the laver in the courtyard, but through the blood of God’s Son that is on the mercy seat. One must see and understand the antitype in the light of the type to see and understand the complete picture.

(For a more detailed exposition of complete and subsequent partial washings as set forth in [John 13:2-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+13.2-20&t=NKJV), in the light of Old Testament typology, see Chapter 8 in the author’s book, [Bible One - From Egypt to Canaan by Arlen Chitwood](http://www.bibleone.net/E2C.htm).)

Doctrine surrounding the “*laying on of hands*,” in connection with doctrine surrounding “baptisms [‘washings’],” is an area of biblical study that also has its basis in Old Testament typology. And, as in “*the doctrine of baptisms*,” this is where one must go to understand that which is referred to by the “*laying on of hands*” in [Hebrews 6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.2&t=NKJV).

“Hands” are used in a figurative manner numerous places throughout Scripture. And they are used in these numerous places various ways to represent *action* on both God’s part and man’s part (*cf*. [Genesis 16:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+16.12&t=NKJV); [Numbers 11:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+11.23&t=NKJV); [1 Samuel 26:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Samuel+26.18&t=NKJV); [Ecclesiastes 2:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ecclesiastes+2.24&t=NKJV)).

They, for example, are used as symbols of “power,” or “strength” (*cf*. [Exodus 15:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+15.6&t=NKJV); [Psalm 17:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+17.7&t=NKJV); [110:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.1&t=NKJV)). They are used to demonstrate “pure” or “unjust” actions (*cf*. [Psalm 90:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+90.17&t=NKJV); [Isaiah 1:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+1.15&t=NKJV)). Or, washing the hands, as Pilate did when he was about to deliver Jesus over to the cry of the Jewish religious leaders to be crucified, could, as he sought to do, symbolize an outward show of “innocence” ([Matthew 27:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+27.24&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Deuteronomy 21:6-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+21.6-7&t=NKJV); [Psalm 26:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+26.6&t=NKJV)).

The “*laying on of hands*” then would represent *a type action* that carries *a particular meaning*. And the meaning is given, in so many words, in the account of that which the Lord instructed Aaron to do with one of two goats on the Day of Atonement ([Leviticus 16:5ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+16.5ff&t=NKJV)).

Aaron was to take a bullock and two goats. The bullock and one goat (determined by lot) were to be killed, and the blood of these two animals was then to be used “*to make an atonement in the holy place*” “for himself, and for his household [the priests ([Leviticus 16:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+16.33&t=NKJV))], and for all the congregation of Israel” ([Leviticus 16:14-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+16.14-19&t=NKJV)).

After Aaron had finished with his work of sprinkling blood before and upon the mercy seat in the Holy of Holies of the tabernacle, he was then to take the live goat and perform a climactic act. He was to lay both hands upon the head of the goat and confess all the “*iniquities*” and “*transgressions*” of the children of Israel. And by this act, the Israelites’ “*iniquities*” and “*transgressions*,” which had just been atoned for, were placed “*upon the head of the goat*.” The goat was then to be taken into “*the wilderness*” and released, never to return back into the camp of Israel ([Leviticus 16:20-22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Leviticus+16.20-22&t=NKJV)).

By Aaron laying his hands on the head of the live goat, there was both *an identification* and *a separation*. By transferring the sins of the people to the goat, *an identification* was established. The goat became identified with these sins rather than the people; and this established *a separation*, which would be even further shown through the goat being taken to an uninhabited part of the land and released.

This thought of *identification* and *separation* can be clearly seen in the action of the Apostles after they had chosen certain men to attend to a particular ministry in the early Church ([Acts 6:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+6.1-6&t=NKJV)). They chose seven men who were “*full of faith and the Holy Spirit.*” These men appeared before the Apostles, the Apostles prayed, and they then “*laid hands*” on the men ([Acts 6:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+6.5-6&t=NKJV)).

There was *an identification* of the Apostles with these men who had been *separated, set apart* from the remainder of the Church for a particular task. And this was shown through the laying on of the Apostles’ hands.

Thus, viewing “*baptisms*” (*lit*., “washings”) and the “*laying on of hands*” together, there is the thought of *cleansing, identification*, and *separation*; and these go together like a hand in a glove.

Christians constitute a people who have been *separated* from the world for a particular purpose ([1 Peter 2:9-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+2.9-11&t=NKJV)). They, forming the “*body*,” are inseparably *identified* with their Lord, who is the “*Head*” of the body ([Ephesians 5:23-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+5.23-32&t=NKJV); [Colossians 1:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+1.18&t=NKJV)). They, positionally, are part of an entirely new creation, *the one new man “in Christ”* ([Ephesians 2:13-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.13-15&t=NKJV); [2 Corinthians 5:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+5.17&t=NKJV)). And, occupying this position and understanding not only the reason why they have been saved but understanding that which lies out ahead as well, Christians are to keep themselves *clean* through repeated “washings” at the laver.

(The section leading into [[Hebrews 8:1-10:22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+8.1-10.22&t=NKJV)], the fourth of the five major warnings in [Hebrews 10:23-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.23-39&t=NKJV), concerns itself more specifically with this overall matter.

Because of Christ’s high priestly ministry [which He performs on the basis of His shed blood on the mercy seat of the heavenly tabernacle], *present cleansing is available for a separated, set apart people who are inseparably identified with their Lord*.)

3) Resurrection, Eternal Judgment

The third of the triad of teachings dealt with in [Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV) can, as the other two parts, pertain to both “*milk*” and “*solid food*” (“strong meat”) within the scope of that which is in view. There are elementary teachings when one comes to the overall subject of *resurrection* and subsequent *judgment*, but there are also teachings that go far beyond the elementary.

Concerning resurrection, there is simply the teaching that the dead will, in the future, be raised. Then within this teaching one will find the more specific biblical teaching that all the dead will not be raised at the same time. Every man will be raised “*in his own order* [‘company’].”

Christ was raised as “*the first fruits those who have fallen asleep*,” anticipating the resurrection of all *others*, both the saved and the unsaved. “*For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ all shall be made alive*” ([1 Corinthians 15:20-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.20-23&t=NKJV)). The two uses of “all” in the verse are *all-inclusive*. All who die “*in Adam*” (which includes all humanity) will be made alive “*in Christ*.”

That is, every man who dies (whether saved or unsaved) will one day be raised *on the basis of the fact Christ was raised*. But, every man will be raised “*in his own order* [‘company’].”

The Church forms one company, the Tribulation saints another, and the Old Testament saints another. And at the conclusion of the Messianic Era there will be yet another company of individuals raised from the dead — the unsaved dead of all the ages ([1 Corinthians 15:22-24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.22-24&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Ezekiel 37:1-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+37.1-14&t=NKJV); [Luke 24:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.5-6&t=NKJV); [1 Thessalonians 4:16-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Thessalonians+4.16-17&t=NKJV); [Revelation 20:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+20.4-6&t=NKJV), [11-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+20.11-15&t=NKJV)).

Then there is the biblical teaching that *judgment always follows resurrection*. There is first *death*, with announced subsequent judgment ([Hebrews 9:27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+9.27&t=NKJV)). This is the biblical order, but this order doesn’t stand alone. Scripture elsewhere presents the dead being judged *only following resurrection* (*cf*. [2 Corinthians 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+5.10&t=NKJV); [Revelation 1:10-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+1.10-18&t=NKJV) [*cf*. [Revelation 4:1ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+4.1ff&t=NKJV)]; [Revelation 20:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+20.4&t=NKJV)).

Every man will not only be *resurrected “in his own order* [‘company’]” but he will also be *judged*, following resurrection, “*in his own order* [‘company’].” Particular future judgments will occur *only following particular companies of individuals being raised from the dead.*

The Church will appear before the judgment seat of Christ, preceding the Tribulation ([2 Corinthians 5:10-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+5.10-11&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Revelation 1:10-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+1.10-20&t=NKJV)); Israel (along with Old Testament saints preceding Abraham) and the martyred Tribulation saints will be judged following Christ’s return at the end of the Tribulation ([Job 14:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Job+14.14&t=NKJV); [19:25-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Job+19.25-27&t=NKJV); [Ezekiel 20:33-38](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ezekiel+20.33-38&t=NKJV); [Revelation 20:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+20.4-6&t=NKJV)); and the unsaved dead of all the ages will be judged at the end of the 1,000-year Messianic Era, which follows the Tribulation ([Revelation 20:11-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+20.11-15&t=NKJV)).

The basics of the preceding though would really have to do more with milk than meat within the framework of biblical doctrine. This is merely the outline of the matter, apart from specifics. But a person must understand the outline before he can begin to properly understand specifics within the outline.

That which is in view concerning the “*resurrection of the dead*” and “*eternal judgment*” in [Hebrews 6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.2&t=NKJV), contextually, *must* pertain to Christians, not other companies of individuals — either saved or unsaved. The whole panorama of doctrine thus far in the opening verses of the sixth chapter has had to do with *Christians alone*, and the summation of the matter can be no different.

The words “*eternal judgment*” in this passage though would really convey an incorrect thought relative to a future judgment of Christians, for Christians have already been judged insofar as eternal verities are concerned (*cf*. [John 3:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.18&t=NKJV)); and the only type of judgment awaiting them has to do with “an age” — the Messianic Era (decisions and determinations emanating from the things revealed at the judgment seat of Christ will have to do with *the Messianic Era alone*, not with the eternal ages).

The seemingly textual problem though is easily resolved by understanding that the Greek word translated eternal in this passage (aionios) can be understood as either “age-lasting” or “eternal,” depending on the context. And the context here demands the former, not the latter.

(Refer to Chapter 2 of this book, for a discussion of how *aionios* is used in the Greek New Testament.)

But what is there beyond simple, factual teachings surrounding the future *resurrection* and *judgment* of Christians that could be categorized as “*solid food*” rather than “*milk*”? The answer is evident. Beyond the simple facts there are teachings surrounding an *out-resurrection*, and the out-resurrection is inseparably connected with the issues of *the judgment sea*t. The out-resurrection actually results from *the purpose* and *outcome* of this judgment.

The “out-resurrection” and that to which it pertains can be found in [Philippians 3:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.11&t=NKJV) (the word “resurrection” in this verse is a translation of the Greek word, *exanastasis*, which should literally be translated “out-resurrection”). And the context ([Philippians 3:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.10&t=NKJV), [12-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.12-14&t=NKJV)) has to do with present Christian activity in view of future decisions and determinations emanating from the things revealed at the judgment seat.

(The Greek word *anastasis*, translated “resurrection” [*e.g*., [Philippians 3:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.10&t=NKJV)], is a compound word meaning “to stand up.” *Ana* means “up,” and *stasis* means “to stand.” *Anastasis* appears in Philippians 3:11 with the Greek preposition “*ek*,” meaning “out of [*i.e.*, ‘from within’],” prefixed to the word [becoming “ex” when prefixed to words beginning with a vowel, as in this case]. Thus, *ex-ana-stasis* means “to stand up out of.”

This “standing up out of” — the “out-resurrection” of [Philippians 3:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.11&t=NKJV) — simply refers to a further separation that will occur at the judgment seat. The resurrection [*anastasis*] of Christians will separate all Christians from all non-Christians [Jew or Gentile]; and the subsequent out-resurrection [*exanastasis*] will separate one group of Christians [the faithful] from the remaining Christians [the unfaithful].)

At the judgment seat of Christ there will be a “standing up” of certain Christians “out of” the remaining Christians, based on decisions and determinations rendered by the righteous Judge. And standing separate from the others within this select group in that day will be a privilege accorded those previously found to have exercised faithfulness in their assigned household responsibilities during the time of their Lord’s absence.

It is in this realm where one finds the meat and strong meat pertaining to *resurrection* and *judgment* awaiting Christians; and it is also in this realm where one finds *the end* or *goal* of all that which is referred to through the triad of doctrinal teaching delineated in [Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV).

And This Will We Do If . . . .

[Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV) introduces the heart of the third of the five major warnings in Hebrews ([Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV)). Verses one and two form the connection for that which preceded with that which follows. Then verse three provides an additional connecting thought, which carries one directly into the heart of the warning itself.

Essentially, the verse states that we will follow the writer’s exhortation to go on to maturity *if God permits us to go on*. This, of course, leaves one with the thought that God may not permit some Christians to go on into the deep things in His Word.

And that is exactly the case, with the warning itself answering the question, “Why?”

“*For it is impossible .* . .” ([Hebrews 6:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4&t=NKJV)).

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Five

**If They Shall Fall Away**

*And this we will do, if God permits.*

*For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted the heavenly gift, and have become partakers of the Holy Spirit,*

*and have tasted the good Word of God and the powers of the age to come,*

*if they fall away, to renew them again to repentance, since they crucify again for themselves the Son of God, and put Him to an open shame*. ([Hebrews 6:3-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3-6&t=NKJV))

The line of teaching thus far in the third of the five major warnings in Hebrews — in perfect keeping with the things set forth in the first two warnings — is *with constant reference to that coming day when Christ will reign over the earth as “King of kings, and Lord of lords.”* The day is coming, at the end of the Great Tribulation, when an angel will sound the last of seven trumpets; and, in connection with the sounding of this trumpet, “*loud voices in heaven*” are going to be heard, announcing:

*The kingdoms of this world have become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ, and He shall reign forever and ever!”* ([Revelation 11:15 ASV](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+11.15&t=ASV); *cf*. [Revelation 10:1-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+10.1-7&t=NKJV)).

The whole of God’s revelation to man, beginning with the opening two chapters of Genesis, *progressively moves toward the same goal — that coming day announced in* [*Revelation 11:15*](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+11.15&t=NKJV). And revelation throughout the book of Hebrews, in perfect keeping with revelation as a whole, views that future day as *central in all matters surrounding the past or present.*

The Warning Passages

*The first of the five major warnings* in the book of Hebrews deals with “*so great salvation*” ([Hebrews 2:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+2.3&t=NKJV)), which is the greatest thing God has ever designed for redeemed man. This salvation has to do with Christians being elevated from this earth and placed in the heavens on the throne as co-heirs with the “*King of kings, and Lord of lords*”; and the time when this will occur is revealed to be in that coming day when Christ fulfills the things that are stated in the seven Messianic passages making up most of chapter one, leading into the first warning.

Also in connection with the first warning there is a revealed angelic ministry ([Hebrews 1:13-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.13-14&t=NKJV); [2:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+2.5&t=NKJV)); and this ministry is with a view to Christians wearing the crowns presently worn by angels when they one day rule in the kingdom under Christ (see the author’s book, [So Great Salvation BOOK](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-four.php#So%20Great%20Salvation%20BOOK), Chapter 2, in this site).

*The second of the five major warnings* ([Hebrews 3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3&t=NKJV); [4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4&t=NKJV)) begins by addressing those to whom the warning applies:

*Therefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling* . . . . ([Hebrews 3:1a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.1a&t=NKJV)).

The parallel is then drawn between Israel’s *earthly calling* and the Christians’ *heavenly calling*, with the writer drawing extensively from the type surrounding Israel’s calling for all his spiritual lessons concerning the Christians’ calling.

*The land of Canaan* during Moses and Joshua’s day was occupied by the *Nephilim*, who had infiltrated and corrupted the Gentile nations in the land ([Numbers 13:32-33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.32-33&t=NKJV) [the word, *Nephilim*, literally meaning, “fallen ones,” is a name used in Scripture for the offspring resulting from a co-habitation of “*the sons of God*” with “*the daughters of men*”; *cf*. [Genesis 6:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+6.4&t=NKJV)]); and the Gentile nations, infiltrated and corrupted by the *Nephilim*, were there at the pre-planned direction of Satan and his angels (who ruled from the heavens through the Gentile nations on earth [[Daniel 10:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+10.13&t=NKJV), [20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+10.20&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Luke 4:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+4.6&t=NKJV); [Revelation 13:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+13.2&t=NKJV)]) to contest Israel’s right to enter into and take possession of this land.

*That heavenly land* to which Christians have been called, on the other hand, is presently occupied by Satan and his angels (the one-third who went along with Satan in his attempted coup, separate from the two-thirds who refused). And at the heart of all teachings surrounding the second warning is a type-antitype parallel between the Israelites under Moses (and later Joshua) and Christians under Christ.

The Israelites, in the type, were called to leave one earthly land (Egypt) and dwell *in another earthly land* (Canaan) as “*a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation*.” They were to dwell in that land, as God’s “*firstborn son*,” within a theocracy (*cf*. [Exodus 4:22-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+4.22-23&t=NKJV); [40:34-38](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+40.34-38&t=NKJV); [Joel 2:27ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.27ff&t=NKJV)).

And in this manner, with God dwelling in Israel’s midst and the nation exercising the rights of primogeniture, the Gentile nations were to be ruled by and blessed through the seed of Abraham, in perfect keeping with [Genesis 12:2-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.2-3&t=NKJV); [14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV); [22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV).

Christians, on the other hand, in the antitype, have been called to leave this earth and dwell in another land, in the heavens, as “kings and priests” and a “holy nation,” occupying the position of God’s firstborn son as well (following the adoption). They are to dwell in that heavenly land within a theocracy, seated on the throne with Christ (*cf*. [1 Peter 2:9-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+2.9-10&t=NKJV); [Revelation 2:26-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+2.26-27&t=NKJV); [5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+5.10&t=NKJV)).

And in this manner, with Christians occupying positions of rulership with Christ, exercising (with Christ) the rights of primogeniture, the Gentile nations are t*o be ruled by and blessed through the seed of Abraham* *from a heavenly sphere as well* ([Galatians 3:29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.29&t=NKJV)), also in perfect keeping with [Genesis 12:2-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.2-3&t=NKJV); [14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV); [22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV).

Satan and his angels are present in that heavenly land today — as the Gentile nations infiltrated and corrupted by the *Nephilim* were present in the land of Canaan during Moses and Joshua’s day — contesting the Christians’ right to one day enter and take possession of the land. This is what the “*manifold wisdom of God*” being made known “*by* [‘through’] *the Church*” to “*the principalities and powers in heavenly places*” is all about in [Ephesians 3:9-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+3.9-11&t=NKJV), and this is what the warfare against these same regal powers in [Ephesians 6:10ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+6.10ff&t=NKJV) is also all about.

The announcement has gone forth, “*by* [through] *the Church*,” to Satan and his angels in the heavens, *that they are about to be replaced.* Both “Christ,” *the Head*, and the “Church,” *the body,* are on hand, waiting for that day. And Satan, with knowledge of this fact, can only know that his time is short and that his days are numbered.

Christ has shown Himself fully qualified to take the kingdom ([Matthew 4:1-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+4.1-11&t=NKJV)), and He has paid redemption’s price to redeem fallen man so that man can be brought back into the position for which he was created in the beginning (*cf*. [Genesis 1:26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.26&t=NKJV), [28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.28&t=NKJV); [3:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+3.15&t=NKJV); [John 19:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.30&t=NKJV)); and the Holy Spirit is in the world today calling out the bride, who will ascend the throne with God’s Son in that coming day.

Knowing these things, Satan and his angels *cannot anymore like* the thought of Christ and Christians one day occupying the heavenly places that they presently occupy than the Gentile nations in the land of Canaan almost 3,500 years ago (under Satan’s direction and control) *could have liked* the thought of the Israelites coming in and occupying that land in their stead.

Thus, the warfare of [Ephesians 6:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+6.11ff&t=NKJV) rages. And, because of this warfare, Christians are called upon to make the necessary preparations. They are called upon to *properly array themselves* for the ongoing “*battle*,” a battle which is *very real*. And there is a “*prize*” in view, which is also *very real — that of one day being accorded the privilege of occupying a position as co-heir with Christ in His kingdom* (*cf*. [Philippians 3:10-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.10-14&t=NKJV)); and this prize can either be *won* (through overcoming in the battle) or *lost* (through being overcome in the battle).

*Then the third major warning in Hebrews* ([Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV); [6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6&t=NKJV)) centers on [Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV) for its spiritual lessons — the only historic account of Melchizedek in the entire Old Testament ([Psalm 110:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.4&t=NKJV), the only other reference to Melchizedek in the Old Testament, draws from [Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV)). And though the account is very brief, it is fraught beyond compare with spiritual significance. *The whole* of that which is taught in the spiritual lessons in Hebrews chapters five through seven draws from *the whole* of that which is taught surrounding Melchizedek in this one Old Testament passage.

Melchizedek was a king-priest in Jerusalem (*cf*. [Genesis 14:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18&t=NKJV); [Psalm 76:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+76.2&t=NKJV)), and though Christ is presently “*a priest after the order of Melchizedek*,” as He is presently “*King* [He was born ‘King of the Jews’],” He has yet to occupy either office (*cf*. [Matthew 2:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+2.2&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10&t=NKJV); [6:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.20&t=NKJV); [7:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+7.11&t=NKJV)). He is presently ministering as High Priest in the heavenly sanctuary, on the basis of shed blood, after the order of Aaron. It will only be when He leaves His present position in the sanctuary and comes forth as “*King*” that He will exercise the office of *King-Priest*, “*after the order of Melchizedek*” (*ref*. Chapter 1 in this book).

The writer of Hebrews dealt with this subject ([Hebrews 5:1-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.1-10&t=NKJV)), then he dealt with spiritual babes “*in Christ*” who were not mature enough to understunderstanding of the things surrounding *Christ’s coming*understanding of the things surrounding *Christ’s coming*and these things ([Hebrews 5:11-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11-14&t=NKJV)), and then he exhorted these immature Christians to leave the foundational truths and go on to maturity ([Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV)).

And there is no getting around *one central truth* in this section of Scripture: Maturity in the faith, as it is set forth in [Hebrews 5:5-6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5-6.2&t=NKJV), has to do with coming to a knowledge and understanding of those things that the Word of God reveals concerning that future day when Christ reigns over the earth as *the great King-Priest, “after the order of Melchizedek.”*

That which is stated in [Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV) (“*And this will we do, if God permit*”), and the heart of the warning itself in [Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV) (“*For it is impossible* . . . .”), MUST be understood within the framework of that which preceded it. These verses must, contextually, be understood as having to do with Christians coming into a knowledge and understanding of the things surrounding *Christ’s coming reign over the earth “after the order of Melchizedek.”*

Reading into [Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV) the thought of salvation by grace through faith (as so many do) is not only completely out of line with the context but it is also completely out of line with any Scriptural teaching concerning salvation by grace through faith, beginning with the opening two chapters of Genesis.

The context has to do with Christian maturity (which centers on coming into an understanding of specific future things, for a revealed purpose); and the message concerning salvation by grace through faith centers on the Christians’ presently possessed salvation, based on two finished works of the Triune Godhead:

1) The finished work of the Son at Calvary.

2) The finished work performed by the Holy Spirit in the life of the believer — breathing life into the one having no life, performed on the basis of and made possible through the Son’s prior finished work.

[Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV) has to do strictly with God’s present and future work in the lives of Christians, not with His past work, effecting their present position, “*in Christ*.” This section of Scripture is written to and has to do solely with those who are already saved, and it has to do specifically with bringing these saved individuals into a mature knowledge and understanding of the things surrounding Christ’s coming reign over the earth, as *the great King-Priest, “after the order of Melchizedek.”*

And This Will We Do, If . . . . .

[Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV) should be taken at face value. That is, *We will go on to maturity* ([Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV)), *if God permits us to go on* ([Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV)). And one is then left with the thought that God may not permit some Christians to go on to maturity.

Leading into [Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV), the writer had previously reprimanded a group of Christians for their lack of spiritual maturity. They had been saved for a sufficient length of time that all of them should have been well enough grounded in the Word that they could do two things ([Hebrews 5:10-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10-14&t=NKJV)):

1) Be able to understand teachings surrounding the coming Melchizedek priesthood of Christ.

2) Be able to teach others these things as well.

Then, following the reprimand, the writer exhorted these same Christians to leave “*the elementary principles* [the rudimentary things of the Christian faith]” and “*go on to perfection* [maturity in ‘the faith’]” ([Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV); [6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV)).

Then after this comes the statement that going on to maturity is *conditional*. It is conditioned on God allowing the person to go on. But bear in mind that this is not maturity in what might be considered a general sense; rather, the reference is to maturity in *a specific sense*. This is maturity in that which Scripture calls “*the faith*” or “*the word of the kingdom*” (*cf*. [Matthew 13:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+13.19&t=NKJV); [1 Timothy 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Timothy+6.12&t=NKJV); [Jude 1:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jude+1.3&t=NKJV)) — maturity in things surrounding Christ’s coming reign over the earth “*after the order of Melchizedek*” ([Hebrews 5:10ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10ff&t=NKJV)).

Thus, the writer is dealing with *a specific realm* of biblical teaching that is little understood in Christendom today. And this would provide a basic explanation (in conjunction with the working of the leaven in [Matthew 13:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+13.33&t=NKJV)) for the existing situation. Not only is there a present lack of knowledge (much less an understanding) concerning this whole overall message in Christendom but something even beyond this exists. Along with the lack of knowledge and understanding, an overt aversion, more often than not, is exhibited toward any teaching on the subject.

(Note, by way of passing, that an aversion of this nature invariably emanates from two spheres: 1) Ignorance rather than knowledge. 2) Immaturity rather than maturity.)

And, projecting the matter out to the end of the dispensation, this is the message Christ will not find being taught to Christians in the churches at the time of His return. Though this is the central message that Christians are supposed to hear once they have been grounded in the rudimentary things of the Word, Christ stated that by the end of the dispensation, at the time of His return, conditions will have become so completely contrary to the way they should exist that He will not find “*faith* [*lit*., ‘the faith’] *on the earth*” ([Luke 18:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+18.8&t=NKJV)).

The reason why God will not allow certain Christians to go on to an understanding of these truths is given in the verses that immediately follow ([Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV)), which comprise the heart of the warning. [Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV) forms a connection between that which has preceded and that which follows; and this verse must, accordingly, be understood in the light of the complete context — verses both preceding and following.

Very briefly, note the verses leading into [Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV) before going on to the verses forming the explanation. The former verses ([Hebrews 5:5-6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5-6.2&t=NKJV)) explain the matter from one standpoint, using one type; then the latter verses ([Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV)) explain the matter from another standpoint, using another type.

[Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV) draws its spiritual lessons from [Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV) (and [Psalm 110](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110&t=NKJV), which also draws from [Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV)). The subject has to do with Abraham meeting Melchizedek following the battle of the kings.

Melchizedek, at this time, brought forth “*bread and wine*” and blessed Abraham, “*of God Most High, Possessor of heaven and earth*” ([Genesis 14:17-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.17-19&t=NKJV)). This, of course, points to that day in the antitype, following the battle of the kings ([Revelation 19:17-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+19.17-21&t=NKJV)), when Christ comes forth with “*bread and wine*” — as *King-Priest, “after the order of Melchizedek”* — to bless Abraham and his descendants, *both heavenly and earthly* ([Matthew 26:29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+26.29&t=NKJV)).

Now note something about the type, which must carry over into the antitype. Abraham, after meeting Melchizedek, no longer manifested any interest in *the things of this world*. The king of Sodom offered him goods, but his response was completely negative. Abraham said to the king of Sodom:

*I have raised my hand to the LORD, God Most High, the Possessor of heaven and earth,*

*that I will take nothing, from a thread to a sandal strap, and that I will not take anything that is yours, lest you should say, “I have made Abram rich”*

*except only what the young men have eaten* . . . .” ([Genesis 14:22-24a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.22-24a&t=NKJV)).

Having met Melchizedek, Abraham manifested *total disinterest* in that which the king of Sodom had to offer. He had found something *so far greater* than the things this world could offer that he refused to take anything (other than food) from the king of Sodom. *Rather, his interest was focused on the things surrounding Melchizedek* (*cf*. [Hebrews 12:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.2&t=NKJV), “*looking to Jesus* . . . [*lit*., ‘Looking from (the surrounding things of the world) to Jesus’]”).

Abraham, by this experience, *could only have gained a whole new perspective on the present in relation to the future, and vice versa*. Thus, Abraham, relative to the magnanimous offer of the king of Sodom, in a word, told the king, *No!*

And that is where Christ comes into the picture in prophecy as *the great King-Priest, “after the order of Melchizedek.”* The Father — “*the possessor of heaven and earth*” ([Genesis 14:22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.22&t=NKJV)) — has given all that He has to the Son (*cf*. [Genesis 24:36](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24.36&t=NKJV); [25:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+25.5&t=NKJV); [John 16:13-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+16.13-15&t=NKJV)); and in that coming day, with the Son occupying both *His own throne in the heavens* and *David’s throne on the earth*, blessings will flow out to the Gentile nations *through the seed of Abraham* (“possessor of heaven and earth [through inheritance]”) *from both heavenly and earthly spheres*.

And when a Christian sees Christ, within this framework, as *the great King-Priest, “after the order of Melchizedek,” this should drive him to manifest the same attitude toward the things of this world as Abraham manifested toward the things of the world after he met Melchizedek*. In the words of the song, “the things of this world” *should* “grow strangely dim.” The Christian *should* possess an entirely new perspective on *the present in relation to the future, and vice versa.*

But, how often is the preceding *really the case* in the lives of Christians? How many *really* understand these things? Or, how many *really view matters within the framework of “the light of His glory and grace”?*

And therein lies the secret to questions surrounding [Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV). We are dealing with the *very choicest* of God’s choice things that He has set aside for Christians, and God has placed certain conditions around allowing Christians to move into a knowledge of the Son in this realm (*cf*. [Philippians 3:10-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Philippians+3.10-14&t=NKJV)). God knows what is in man; and He also knows what man coming into a knowledge and understanding of these things will, too often, do.

God knows that numerous Christians, after coming into a knowledge and understanding of Christ as *King-Priest, “after the order of Melchizedek,”* would not manifest the same attitude at all toward the world as Abraham manifested after he met Melchizedek. They would, instead, either continue in or one day return to their worldly interest and involvement (*cf*. [1 John 2:15-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+2.15-17&t=NKJV)), which is within a world presently ruled by Satan and his angels. And by so doing, such Christians could only bring *shame* upon Christ’s name (this will be further dealt with later in the chapter within the framework of that which is stated in [Hebrews 6:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.6&t=NKJV)).

The matter surrounding God allowing or not allowing a Christian to go on to maturity though should be viewed more within the framework of man’s attitude toward these things than it should within the framework of God’s omniscience *per se*. Scripture clearly states,

*If anyone want to do* [is willing to do] *His will, he shall know concerning the doctrine* . . . . ([John 7:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+7.17&t=NKJV))

That is: Do you *really* want to know Christ as “*author* [‘source’] *of eternal salvation* [salvation for the age (the Messianic Era)]”? ([Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV)). Are you *serious* about the present warfare and one day coming into a realization of the proffered inheritance? If so, there should be no reason why God would not allow you to go on into a knowledge and understanding of the various things surrounding His Son’s coming reign over the earth.

But, if on the other hand, *an interest in and a seriousness about the matter are not present*, there is no biblical reason why God should allow such a person to go on into a knowledge and understanding of these things. In fact, within a biblical perspective, the opposite would exist instead. From a biblical perspective, God would not allow such a person to go on, for a revealed reason.

And with this in mind, we’re ready to go on into the heart of the warning and see the explanation to verse three from the perspective of the type in the preceding warning in chapters three and four.

For It Is Impossible . . .

[Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV) is looked upon by numerous Christians as possibly the most difficult and/or controversial passage in all Scripture. And the reason why the passage is looked upon after this fashion is because of an erroneous interpretative approach. The passage is invariably approached from the standpoint of teachings surrounding the Christians’ presently possessed eternal salvation — salvation “*by grace through faith*.”

The passage though, as previously stated, doesn’t deal with this subject. And, not dealing with this subject, it is understandable why those who seek to interpret the passage from the standpoint of teachings surrounding salvation by grace through faith find themselves in unfamiliar surroundings. And not only is this the case, but they often, as well, find themselves being forced into erroneous views concerning salvation.

Then, beyond the preceding, the correct subject matter is not even being dealt with. Rather, through this erroneous interpretative approach, the correct subject matter is, instead, completely obscured. And such can only foster the present work of the enemy as it is outlined in [2 Corinthians 4:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+4.4&t=NKJV) — *blinding the minds of Christians* relative to “*the gospel of the glory of Christ*” (NKJV; ASV).

1) Once Enlightened…But Fell Away

Certain descriptive words appearing in verses four and five make it virtually impossible to look upon these verses as describing unsaved people.

There is the word, “*enlightened*” ([Hebrews 6:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4&t=NKJV)), which is used in [Hebrews 10:32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.32&t=NKJV), translated “*illuminated*.” And according to [1 Corinthians 2:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+2.14&t=NKJV), “*the natural man*” cannot be enlightened or illuminated in spiritual matters. Then, beyond that, the passage is dealing with things other than *the* “*milk*” *of the Word*; it is dealing with the “*solid food* [strong meat]” *of the Word* ([Hebrews 5:12-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12-14&t=NKJV)).

Then there is the word, “*tasted*” ([Hebrews 6:4-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-5&t=NKJV)). This is the same word used for Christ *tasting death “for every man”* in [Hebrews 2:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+2.9&t=NKJV). The experiences entered into by those in [Hebrews 6:4-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-5&t=NKJV) *must* be looked upon as *a tasting to the same extent that Christ tasted “death” at Calvary*. The latter was full and complete, and the former must be as well.

And the last descriptive word is “*partakers*” ([Hebrews 6:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4&t=NKJV)). This is the same word translated “*fellows*” in [Hebrews 1:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.9&t=NKJV) and “*partakers*” in [Hebrews 3:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.1&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.14&t=NKJV). This is the word *metochoi*, which could be better translated, “companions.” It is used in chapters one and three describing Christ’s co-heirs, His *companions*, in the coming day of His power.

Being “*enlightened*,” tasting “*of the heavenly gift*,” being made “*partakers of the Holy Spirit*,” tasting “*the good Word of God*,” and tasting “*the powers of the world* [‘age’] *to come*” form a description of Christians progressively coming into a mature knowledge and understanding of the things surrounding Christ as *the great King-Priest “after the order of Melchizedek”* from [Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV). It, thus, has to do with Christians coming into a mature knowledge and understanding of Christ and His companions’ coming reign over the earth.

Then, spiritual lessons surrounding the possibility of Christians *falling away* after coming into this mature state is drawn from the type dealt with prior to the introduction of Melchizedek in [Hebrews 5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5&t=NKJV) — the account of the Israelites under Moses ([Hebrews 3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3&t=NKJV); [4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4&t=NKJV)).

The Israelites under Moses passed through similar experiences within the framework of their earthly calling, climaxed by their hearing the report of the twelve spies and tasting the actual fruits of the land that they had brought back with them.

And that which happened to the Israelites at this point (in the type) is where one must go in order to understand the falling away and accompanying statements (in the antitype) in [Hebrews 6:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.6&t=NKJV).

The Israelites at Kadesh-Barnea were in possession of the Word of God (received at Sinai), God dwelled in their midst (in the Holy of Holies of the tabernacle, built and erected at Sinai), they had heard the report of the spies, and they had tasted the actual fruits of the land (brought back by the spies).

And occupying this position, they were then ready to enter the land, conquer and possess the land, and subsequently realize their calling in the land as God’s firstborn son.

They, at this point, were in possession of what could only be looked upon as *a mature knowledge* of the whole of that which was in view. They understood their calling and that which lay out ahead. And it is at this point that they fell away and, within the framework of that stated in the antitype in [Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV), found it *impossible to be renewed “again to repentance.”*

2) Impossible To Renew Again…Because…

The report that the spies brought back concerning the land was both *positive* and *negative*. It was a good land, flowing with “*milk and honey*”; but the inhabitants, infiltrated by the *Nephilim*, were strong and lived in walled cities ([Numbers 13:26-29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.26-29&t=NKJV), [32-33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.32-33&t=NKJV)).

Caleb and Joshua, exhorting the people, said,

*Let us go up at once and take possession, for we are well able to overcome it.* ([Numbers 13:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.30&t=NKJV))

But the remaining spies said,

*We are not able to go up against the people, for they are stronger than we.* ([Numbers 13:31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.31&t=NKJV))

The people of Israel heard the report and both exhortations, but they believed *the evil report* of the ten spies rather than *the true report* of Caleb and Joshua. And their resulting actions said it all. They wept, began to murmur against Moses and Aaron, and then looked back to Egypt, wishing that they had never left. Then, to climax matters, they sought to appoint another leader and return to Egypt ([Numbers 14:1-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+14.1-4&t=NKJV)).

They, in the words of the antitype, *fell away*. They had turned their backs upon God; and God, correspondingly, turned His back upon them. Because of that which had transpired, the most severe judgment possible was pronounced upon the entire accountable generation. Every single individual comprising that generation, twenty years old and above, save Caleb and Joshua, was to be overthrown in the wilderness.

And once this apostasy had occurred (with its corresponding pronounced judgment), there could be *no renewal “again to repentance”* (as in the antitype). And the reason, drawing again from the antitype (“*crucify to themselves the Son of God*”), is because they had brought shame and reproach upon the One (God) dwelling in their midst, who was to have led them victoriously into the land.

(“Repentance” simply means *a change of mind*. And in both the type and antitype, the change of mind is *on the part of God*, not on the part of the Israelites [type] or on the part of Christians [antitype].)

The Israelites, the very next day, repented (changed their minds). They “*rose up early*” and sought to “*go up to the place*” which the Lord had promised. *But the Lord didn’t repent* (He didn’t change His mind). He was no longer with them relative to their entering the land and victoriously combating the enemy; and, consequently, the Israelites, trying to enter the land apart from the Lord’s leadership, were smitten and driven back ([Numbers 14:40-45](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+14.40-45&t=NKJV)).

And that’s what [Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV) is about. If God allows a Christian to come into a mature knowledge of His Son’s coming reign as *the great King-Priest “after the order of Melchizedek,”* and that Christian apostatizes, the same thing will occur as that which occurred with the Israelites under Moses (it would have to, for the antitype must follow the type in exact detail).

The Christian would be *cut off* insofar as those things surrounding his calling were concerned. He would not be allowed to subsequently enter that heavenly land to which he had been called and victoriously combat the enemy therein. He could never be brought back to the position that he had previously occupied. Which is to say, he could not be *renewed “again to repentance.”*

Though the Christian may later change *his mind* about the matter (as the Israelites did), God would not change *His mind* (as in the type). The Christian, like the Israelites, would be overthrown on the right side of the blood but on the wrong side of the goal of his calling.

And the reason for such severe judgment on God’s part results from the fact that, through this act, such a Christian could only bring shame and reproach upon the name of Christ.

Note the entire expression,

. . . *they crucify again for themselves the Son of God* [‘afresh,’ as in the KJV, is not in the Greek text, though implied], *and put Him to an open shame*” ([Hebrews 6:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.6&t=NKJV)).

The thought has to do with the *shame and reproach surrounding Calvary*, not with subjecting the Son to a second crucifixion, for such an act is impossible ([Hebrews 7:27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+7.27&t=NKJV)).

But subjecting the Son to this same type of shame and reproach at the hands of the world is very possible today; and such shame and reproach can result from the act of any Christian falling away in the antitype of the Israelites at Kadesh-Barnea.

A Christian though, to fall away after this fashion, would have to do two things:

1) He would first have to come into a mature knowledge and understanding of the things surrounding Christ’s coming reign over the earth.

2) He would then have to apostatize after the same fashion in which the Israelites apostatized (looking away from Moses and the land [an earthly land], back to Egypt; *i.e*., looking away from Christ and the land [a heavenly land], back to the world).

And doing this, a Christian would be subjecting God’s Son to the same type of *humiliation and shame* that He experienced at Calvary. The expression, “*crucify again for themselves*,” is actually explained by the remainder of the verse — “*put* [expose] *Him to an open shame*.” It is subjecting the world’s coming Ruler to *humiliation and shame* by the one “*in Christ*” turning from that which lies out ahead and focusing his attention back on the present world system under the incumbent ruler, Satan.

And this is something that *God will not allow*. Thus, the verse,

*And this we will do* [we will go on to maturity in the things surrounding Christ’s coming reign over the earth], *if God permits* [if God permits us to go on]” ([Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV)).

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Six

**Two Kinds of Growth**

*For the earth which drinks in the rain that often comes upon it, and bears herbs useful for those by whom it is cultivated, receives blessing from God;*

*but if it bears thorns and briars, it is rejected and near to being cursed, whose end is to be burned*. ([Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV))

The subject matter, contextually, must center on that which has preceded it. The writer uses an illustration, drawn from nature, which corresponds to that which he has been discussing. It is an illustration concerning two kinds of plant growth, resulting in two types of fruit.

This illustration would reflect back on the immediate context, which deals with maturity in the faith. It deals with Christian growth or non-growth and a corresponding fruit bearing in relation to each.

The two types of fruit presented though are quite different, with one type being looked upon as *barren* (fruitless) in other passages of Scripture (*cf*. [Mark 11:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+11.13&t=NKJV); [James 2:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.20&t=NKJV) [*ref*. ASV]).

Some Greek manuscripts have the word *arge*, “barren,” rather than *nekros*, “dead,” in [James 2:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.20&t=NKJV). Regardless though, “barren” or “dead,” in the sense spoken of here, would be the same — the same as that which is seen in [Hebrews 6:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.8&t=NKJV), bearing “*thorns and briers*.” As in the previous verses, the unsaved are not in view in [Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV); nor is one’s eternal destiny in view. The passage deals strictly with those who are already saved, those in a position to bring forth fruit.

Drawing from the type in the context, the passage deals with things beyond [Exodus 12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12&t=NKJV) — with man at a point beyond the death of the firstborn. It deals with man in a position *to bring forth fruit relative to the hope of his calling*.

Preceding events surrounding the death of the firstborn, there is no such thing as man being placed in a position of this nature. Prior to the point of salvation, a person is associated only with the earth. He is associated with Adam, who was made from “*the dust of the ground*” ([Genesis 2:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+2.7&t=NKJV)). And at the time of the fall, the ground came under a curse:

. . . *Cursed is the ground for your sake; in toil you shall eat of it all the days of your life.*

*Both thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you* . . . . ([Genesis 3:17-18a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+3.17-18a&t=NKJV) [17b])

Fallen man is “*dead in trespasses and sins*” ([Ephesians 2:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.1&t=NKJV)). And insofar as works or fruit bearing are concerned, he can only do two things:

1) He can only produce works or bring forth fruit *in association with the cursed earth, with which he finds himself connected.*

2) He can only be active after this fashion *within the sphere of the one life he possesses* (“natural,” *i.e*., “soulical” [*cf*. [1 Corinthians 2:14ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+2.14ff&t=NKJV)]).

He could *never, in an eternity of time*, rise above his connection with the earth; nor, in the same eternity of time, could he remove himself from the “natural.” Thus, he, in and of himself, could *never bring forth anything acceptable to God*. All which he, in his fallen state, might consider as “righteous” would only be looked upon by God after one fashion — “*as filthy rags*” ([Isaiah 64:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+64.6&t=NKJV)).

Man has *a spiritual problem*, which had its origin in the fall. Man, at that time, found himself separated from God; and, apart from divine intervention, resulting in redemption, that’s where he would not only continue to remain today but for all eternity as well.

Unredeemed man’s association with the “natural” leaves him *alienated from God*; and his association with the “earth” leaves him *destined for destruction*.

This is the reason man MUST be born from above, which is a spiritual birth. *There is no alternative*. If he would escape the state in which he presently finds himself, *he must escape this state through God’s provided means*.

Unredeemed man has no capacity whatsoever to act either relative to or within the “spiritual realm.” Insofar as spiritual matters are concerned, unredeemed man has no more ability to act than any person in any graveyard has the ability to act physically. Both are *dead* — one spiritually, the other physically. And, apart from divine intervention, neither could ever make even the most minute move conceivable — one in the spiritual realm, the other in the physical realm.

Thus, unredeemed man, to escape his present state, *must be made alive spiritually*. He *must* be brought from his dead, alienated state to a living, non-alienated state. That is, he *must* be removed from his present state and be placed in an entirely different state. He *must* pass “*from death to life*” ([John 5:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+5.24&t=NKJV)).

A man can make no move toward the Red Sea and the things lying beyond (Exodus 13ff) until he has first settled the matter surrounding *the death of the firstborn* ([Exodus 12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12&t=NKJV)). Otherwise, as Pharaoh and his armed forces, he will be stopped at the Sea; *and there will he die, with no removal from Egypt and resurrection to life on the eastern banks of the Sea in view*.

He must first *believe on the One who died in his stead*, with God then viewing the matter exactly as seen in the type in Exodus chapter twelve:

. . . *when I see the blood, I will pass over you* . . . . ([Exodus 12:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12.13&t=NKJV))

Until a person has settled this matter, *he can never be associated with anything other than Egypt and the things of that land*. But once he has settled this matter, *a new land comes into view*. Once he has settled this matter, *he finds himself associated with a land removed from Egypt.*

But, there is still a problem.

And that still-existing problem is what [Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV) is about. Though redeemed man finds himself associated with a land removed from Egypt, the land of Egypt is not done away with. The land of Egypt and all things appertaining thereunto *remain in existence*.

In this respect, though redeemed man possesses a new nature, the old nature is still present. Matters are exactly as in the original type in [Genesis 1:3-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.3-5&t=NKJV) when God “*commanded the light to shine out of darkness*” ([John 1:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.5&t=NKJV); [2 Corinthians 4:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+4.6&t=NKJV)). The darkness remained, though light now shined forth out of that darkness (*ref*. the author’s book, [Bible One - From Egypt to Canaan by Arlen Chitwood](http://www.bibleone.net/E2C.htm), Chapter 7, in this site).

Redeemed man thus finds himself in a position where he can go *in either of two directions*. He can either *fix his attention on the land out ahead*, or he can turn and *fix his attention on the land from which he was called*.

Insofar as his eternal destiny is concerned, it could never make one iota of difference which direction he takes. But, insofar as the hope of his calling — the purpose for his salvation — is concerned, *it would make every difference*.

[Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV) presents man with a dual capacity in this realm. That is, he possesses the capacity to go in either direction. Thus, both textually and contextually, it is evident that the passage is dealing only with those who have passed “*from death to life*.” Those remaining “*dead in trespasses and sins*” do not possess this dual capacity and cannot be in view at all.

(Man must be made alive “spiritually,” for “*God is spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth*” [[John 4:24 NASB](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+4.24&t=NASB), NIV]. Consequently, in order for man to find himself in a non-alienated state once again, he must, through divine intervention [for he himself is powerless to act], be restored “spiritually”; and this can be accomplished *only through the spiritual birth from above*.

[John 4:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+4.24&t=NKJV) has nothing to do with God in a physical sense, as the verse is often understood [stating, on the basis of this verse, that God does not have a physical existence]. The word “spirit” is *anarthrous* [no article before the word] in the Greek text, referring to God’s *character* [His essence, His being] rather than to His *identity*. The expression is used in the same sense as another expression by John, “*God is love*” [[1 John 4:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+4.16&t=NKJV)]. And the latter has no more to do with the physical than the former, or vice versa. Both refer to God’s *character*.

The preceding, as well, shows the reason why the natural man finds himself alienated from God. He, within the framework of his *character*, acts in the “natural,” for that is the only sphere in which it is possible for him to act. But God, within the framework of His *character*, acts in the “spiritual,” *never* the “natural.” And one is totally incompatible with the other. *Ishmael cannot act within the sphere occupied by Isaac. It is impossible*.

Thus, the “natural man” cannot worship God “*in spirit and in truth*”; nor can he exercise “faith,” apart from which it is impossible to please God [[Hebrews 11:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11.6&t=NKJV)]. Only the person having experienced the spiritual birth from above is in a position to do either.

But, such a person may or may not conduct his affairs in the spiritual realm, though Scripture, time after time, exhorts him to so do. Those things that characterize his life may or may not be in line with those things that characterize God, though they should be. He still possesses the old nature [the natural (soulical) man, connected with the earth], though he [unlike unredeemed man] also possesses the new nature [the spiritual man, connected with God, another land, etc.]. And a Christian is *fully capable* of following either nature, going in either direction.

Note that saved man functioning in the realm of the *natural, the soulical*, rather than the spiritual, can only bring forth exactly the same thing in relation to fruit bearing as unsaved man, for he is operating in connection with a cursed earth, the first birth, etc. And God will always reject such works.

And for this reason Scripture is filled with spiritual lessons, exhortations, and warnings concerning the overall matter surrounding the Christians’ calling. And herein, as well, lies *the reason for the necessity of proper spiritual growth to maturity, for redeemed man invariably lives within the sphere of which ever nature is cultivated, nurtured, and fed*.)

Blessings From God

Several lines of teaching can be drawn from [Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV). One would have to do with redeemed man in relation to two lands — *one earthly, the other heavenly*. Another line of teaching would contrast the two lands themselves — *one land having to do with our natural birth and the other with our spiritual birth*. However, the latter (referring to the two lands) would still have to be understood in conjunction with the former (referring to redeemed man), for one cannot be separated from the other.

1) The Land of Canaan

*That heavenly land to which Christians under Christ have been called* (in a place removed from the earth) is typified by *the earthly land to which the Israelites under Moses were called* (the land of Canaan). And *the land from which the Israelites were called* (Egypt) would typify *the land from which Christians have been called* (the earth).

Just as the Israelites were to separate themselves from Egypt and fix their attention on the land set before them, Christians are to separate themselves from this world and fix their attention on the land set before them.

Both callings thus concern two lands — *one from which the person has been called*, and the other *to which the person has been called*; and God draws spiritual lessons from the former calling (the Israelites under Moses) to teach His people great spiritual truths concerning the latter calling (Christians under Christ).

*The land of Canaan* was the place wherein the Israelites under Moses could realize both a “rest” and an “inheritance” ([Deuteronomy 12:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+12.9&t=NKJV)). God said of the land of Canaan,

*but the land which you cross over to possess is a land of hills and valleys, which drinks water from the rain of heaven,*

*a land for which the LORD your God cares; the eyes of the LORD your God are always on it, from the beginning of the year to the very end of the year.* ([Deuteronomy 11:11-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+11.11-12&t=NKJV))

“Rain,” in this respect, is associated with *God’s blessings*. In [Deuteronomy 32:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+32.2&t=NKJV), the Lord states,

*Let My teaching drop as the rain, My speech distill as the dew, as raindrops on the tender herb, and as showers on the grass.*

Then, during the coming Messianic Era the presence or absence of “rain” is associated with the presence or absence of blessings. On the one hand, the prophesied “latter rain” is associated with blessings for Israel, which will result in blessings for the Gentile nations ([Joel 2:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.23&t=NKJV)); and, on the other hand, the absence of “rain” is associated with a withholding of blessings from these nations ([Zechariah 14:17-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Zechariah+14.17-19&t=NKJV)).

(Though the land of Canaan is part of the earth, which is under a curse, it is used in an eschatological sense within the framework of the type [referring to that day when the earth will be removed from the present curse]. In this respect, it is used relative to both *the rest set before Christians* [to be realized in that coming seventh day, the earth’s coming Sabbath] and *a land contrasted with Egypt* [always a type of *the world* in Scripture]. In the latter respect, the *land of Canaan* would be associated with “the spiritual” and *the land of Egypt* with “the natural.”)

Thus, *the land of Canaan* corresponds to the land of [Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV), which “*drinks in the rain that often comes upon it*,” which “*receives blessings from God*.” And *the land of Canaan* (to which the Israelites under Moses were called) is set forth as a type of *that heavenly land* (to which Christians under Christ have been called).

Contextually, this verse would have to do with those who have been allowed to go on to maturity within the framework of [Hebrews 6:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-6&t=NKJV), remaining faithful to their calling. The blessings in view would have to do with *being enlightened* concerning the things out ahead — *tasting “the heavenly gift . . . the good Word of God and the powers of the age to come”* — and with *being made “partakers* [‘companions’] *of the Holy Spirit”* in these matters, as He leads individuals “*into all truth*” ([Hebrews 6:4-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-5&t=NKJV); [John 16:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+16.13&t=NKJV)).

And further, contextually, the verse would have to do with that coming day when Christ will be *the great King-Priest “after the order of Melchizedek”* ([Hebrews 5:5-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.5-14&t=NKJV)). That will be the day when the blessings of God will find their ultimate fulfillment insofar as man on the present earth is concerned. In that day the blessings of God will flow out through the Seed of Abraham to the Gentile nations from both heavenly and earthly spheres. And the Seed of Abraham, in that day, will dwell in these lands (heavenly and earthly), corresponding to the land of [Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV).

2) Caleb and Joshua

Caleb and Joshua — two of the Israelites under Moses at Kadesh-Barnea, and two of the twelve spies sent in to obtain a report concerning the land of Canaan — had a proper respect for God’s calling and the land set before them. All twelve of the spies first presented a uniform report to Israel concerning the land (a land flowing with “*milk and honey* [they had brought back some of the actual fruits of the land for the people to see],” but strong Gentile nations, infiltrated by the *Nephilim*, dwelled in the land).

Then Caleb, with the support of Joshua, apart from the other ten, “*quieted the people before Moses*” and exhorted them after a positive fashion ([Numbers 13:26-29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.26-29&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Numbers 13:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.33&t=NKJV)):

*Let us go up at once and take possession, for we are well able to overcome it.* ([Numbers 13:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.30&t=NKJV))

Though the enemy was stronger and more numerous than the Israelites, Caleb and Joshua believed that which God had to say concerning their calling and the land set before them.

They had seen God’s previous dealings with the Egyptians the night of the Passover ([Exodus 12:29ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12.29ff&t=NKJV)), they had seen God’s miraculous parting of the waters of the Red Sea ([Exodus 14:21-22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+14.21-22&t=NKJV)), they had seen God’s destruction of the Egyptian army in the Red Sea ([Exodus 14:23-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+14.23-28&t=NKJV)), they had seen God’s provision of food and water in the wilderness ([Exodus 16:4-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+16.4-18&t=NKJV); [17:1-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+17.1-7&t=NKJV)), and they had seen God’s continued provision of victory over anyone who stood in the way of their march toward Sinai and their subsequent march toward the land of Canaan ([Exodus 17:8-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+17.8-14&t=NKJV)).

(In fact, God’s attitude toward anyone standing in Israel’s way was such that He not only completely destroyed the Egyptian army that moved into the sea after Israel [“*Not so much as one of them remained.*” ([Exodus 14:28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+14.28&t=NKJV))], but He pronounced a terminal, annihilating judgment upon the “*first of the nations*” [[Numbers 24:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+24.20&t=NKJV)] to war against Israel in the wilderness. God said to Moses:

*Write this for a memorial in the book and recount it in the hearing of Joshua, that I will utterly blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven.* [[Exodus 17:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+17.14&t=NKJV)].

The Amalekite nation existed for hundreds of years following the Exodus under Moses [continuing to exist throughout this time because of the failure of the Israelites to carry out their God-appointed task as executioners of the Amalekites ([Deuteronomy 25:17-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+25.17-19&t=NKJV); [1 Samuel 15:2-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Samuel+15.2-26&t=NKJV); [2 Samuel 1:1-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Samuel+1.1-16&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Revelation 3:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+3.11&t=NKJV))]. But, during the days of Hezekiah, this nation was ultimately destroyed after the fashion that God had stated centuries earlier, at the time of the Exodus [[1 Chronicles 4:39-43](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Chronicles+4.39-43&t=NKJV)]. And, as a consequence, the only available record today that this nation ever even existed can be found only one place — *in the pages of Scripture.*

Secular history knows *nothing* of the Amalekites, for God destroyed this nation to the extent that man, in his secular world today [archaeology, etc.], *can find no trace whatsoever of the people of this nation*.)

Caleb and Joshua had seen and experienced these things; and they knew that it was through the Lord’s strength and power, not their own, that deliverance or provision had been forthcoming at every point. The Lord had slain the firstborn in Egypt ([Exodus 12:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12.12&t=NKJV)), the Lord had destroyed the Egyptian army, and the Lord was the One who warred with Amalek (eventually blotting him out of existence [[Exodus 17:14-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+17.14-16&t=NKJV)]). And the Lord was the One who, as well, over the previous one and one-half years, had miraculously provided food and water in the wilderness for the Israelites ([Exodus 16:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+16.4&t=NKJV); [17:5-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+17.5-7&t=NKJV)).

Thus, for Caleb and Joshua (and it should have been the same for the remainder of the nation), it was really a simple matter to look out ahead to the land set before them and believe, regardless of the strength of the land’s inhabitants or the comparative weakness and seeming inability of the Israelites, that the people of Israel could “*go up at once, and possess it*.” The people of Israel would be “*well able to overcome it*,” but not *in their own strength and power*. They, as before, would have to rely upon the Lord, with *His strength and power*; and by so doing, through *faith* in the Lord, *nothing* could stand in their way as they marched into the land and victoriously engaged the enemy.

But there was another side to the matter, and that was the attitude exhibited by the ten remaining spies, with their “*evil report*.” They, in a *faithless* manner, overlooking all God’s works that had preceded, said to the Israelites,

*We are not able to go up against the people, for they are stronger than we*. ([Numbers 13:31](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.31&t=NKJV))

It is these two reports, with the resulting action of Caleb and Joshua on the one hand and the remainder of the nation on the other, which establish a basis for much of that which is taught in [Hebrews 3-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3-6&t=NKJV). And nearing the end of this whole section, in [Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV), these two totally incompatible ways in which the Israelites viewed the land set before them (typifying the two totally incompatible ways Christians can view the land set before them) are set forth in a very simple illustration, drawn from nature.

Within one sphere, there is *acceptance, followed by blessings*; within the other, there is *rejection, followed by curses*. And no middle ground lies between the two (*cf*. [Matthew 12:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+12.30&t=NKJV)). Thus, these two verses outline the only two options open to any Christian:

1) That of one day coming into a realization of his calling ([Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV)), associated with acceptance and blessings.

2) Or, that of one day being overthrown short of the goal of his calling ([Hebrews 6:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.8&t=NKJV)), associated with rejection and curses.

Rejected . . .

*The land of Canaan* is set forth, on the one hand, corresponding to the land of [Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV), associated with blessings from God; then it is set forth, on the other hand, as being sharply contrasted with the land of Egypt, which corresponds to the earth under a curse. And though the curse will be lifted for one thousand years (during the coming Messianic Era), at the end of this time “*the earth and the works that are in it will be burned up*” (*cf*. [2 Peter 3:10-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Peter+3.10-13&t=NKJV)).

It is *the land of Egypt* that corresponds to the land in [Hebrews 6:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.8&t=NKJV) — that which bears “*thorns and briers . . . whose end is to be burned* [set in sharp contrast to the land and its related fruit in [Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV)].” And “*the land of Egypt*” is *a type of the world in which man presently lives* — a world under a curse, which brings forth “*thorns and thistles*” ([Genesis 3:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+3.17-18&t=NKJV)).

Whether it be the earth under a curse or natural man connected with the earth, insofar as God is concerned, there can only be *total, complete rejection*. That which bears thorns and briers is *rejected*.

The reference in Hebrews though is not to unredeemed man on the earth (although he has been rejected). The reference is to redeemed man who looks to that land that bears “thorns and briers” ([Hebrews 6:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.8&t=NKJV)) rather than to that land that brings forth “*herbs useful for those by whom it is cultivated*” ([Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV)). The reference is to the antitype of those Israelites under Moses at Kadesh-Barnea who believed the evil report of the ten spies concerning the land of Canaan, causing them to look back to Egypt rather than out ahead to the land of their calling ([Numbers 13:31-14:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Numbers+13.31-14.4&t=NKJV)).

These Israelites looked back to a land that bore “*thorns and briers*” rather than out ahead to a land that brought forth “*herbs useful for those by whom it is cultivated*.” And their subsequent overthrow in the wilderness was completely in line with that which God had to say about Egypt, the land to which they had sought to return. Relative to their calling and the land set before them (*called out of Egypt to dwell in the land of Canaan as God’s firstborn son, within a theocracy*), they were “*rejected*.” They were overthrown in the wilderness, short of this goal.

And the warning to Christians is that they can, by following the same example, only suffer the same fate. Eternally saved? Yes! But, just as the Israelites under Moses were overthrown on the right side of the blood at a place short of the goal of their calling, so can Christians under Christ be overthrown at the same place, for the same reason, after the identical fashion (*cf*. [1 Corinthians 9:24-10:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+9.24-10.11&t=NKJV)).

1) Righteous Lot

The experiences of “*righteous*” Lot ([2 Peter 2:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Peter+2.7-8&t=NKJV)) form another Old Testament type — from a different perspective — concerning redeemed man’s calling from the world to a land removed from the world. And, within this account, the type is quite instructive concerning the inability of a carnal, worldly person (though redeemed) to act in any depth at all within the “spiritual.”

Lot was among those whom Abraham rescued in the battle of the kings in [Genesis 14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14&t=NKJV). And, from the record, it seems apparent that Lot was with Abraham when Melchizedek came forth with bread and wine following this battle.

*However, it was Abraham alone who was blessed by Melchizedek and was allowed to understand enough about that which was happening to make him lose all interest in the things that the world had to offer* ([Genesis 14:18-24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-24&t=NKJV)).

(One aspect of the preceding type would prevent Lot from entering into these experiences, for he was not of Abraham’s seed. But the aspect of the type being viewed is that of two saved individuals in Melchizedek’s presence, not God’s covenant dealings and promises to Abraham and his seed.

Note one facet of teaching from this aspect of the type relative to Christians in the coming kingdom. *All will be present when Christ exercises the Melchizedek priesthood, but not all will be blessed*.)

Abraham and Lot, in this respect, would fit within the framework of [Hebrews 6:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-6&t=NKJV). One was allowed to go on into an understanding of the things surrounding Melchizedek, but not so with the other. Viewing their individual backgrounds, the reason becomes evident; and viewing that which occurred in the lives of these two men in subsequent years, the end result is quite instructive.

Abraham lived in “*the plains of Mamre*,” near Hebron, located *in the mountainous terrain of the high country* ([Genesis 13:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.18&t=NKJV); [14:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.13&t=NKJV); [18:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+18.1&t=NKJV); [23:17-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+23.17-19&t=NKJV); [35:27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+35.27&t=NKJV)). Lot, on the other hand, lived in Sodom, in *“the plain of Jordan,” in the low-lying country* ([Genesis 13:10-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.10-12&t=NKJV); [14:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.12&t=NKJV); [19:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.1&t=NKJV)).

The difference in these two places would be similar to the difference between Jerusalem and Jericho. Jerusalem was located *in the mountainous terrain of the high country*, but Jericho was located *near the lowest point in the land* (actually, on earth), near the Dead Sea at the southern end of the Jordan plain (where Sodom and the other cities of the plain are believed to have once existed).

Jerusalem and Jericho are set in sharp contrast to one another in Scripture. One is “*the city of the great King*,” from which blessings for the nations of the earth will flow during the coming age ([Psalm 48:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+48.2&t=NKJV); [Zechariah 14:1-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Zechariah+14.1-21&t=NKJV)); but “*a curse*” rests upon the other ([Joshua 6:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joshua+6.18&t=NKJV), [26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joshua+6.26&t=NKJV)). And the two places where Abraham and Lot lived are set in similar sharp contrast.

Lot’s downward path can be seen in different places from [Genesis 13:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.10&t=NKJV) to [Genesis 19:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.1&t=NKJV), and the results of his downward path can be seen in [Genesis 14:12-24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.12-24&t=NKJV); [19:1-38](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.1-38&t=NKJV).

Lot “*lifted up his eyes, and saw all the plain of Jordan, that it was well watered everywhere* . . . .” He then “*chose for himself all the plain of Jordan . . . dwelt in the cities of the plain, and pitched his tent even as far as Sodom*.” And in the process of doing this, *he separated himself from Abraham* ([Genesis 13:10-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.10-12&t=NKJV)). That is, *the carnal believer separated himself from the spiritual believer.*

The day came when Lot got into trouble and had to be rescued by Abraham ([Genesis 14:12-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.12-16&t=NKJV)). But his long association with the cities of the plain could only have prevented him from seeing beyond the “*letter*” when Melchizedek subsequently appeared, following the battle of the kings ([Genesis 14:18-24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-24&t=NKJV)); and his failure to see beyond the “*letter*,” coupled with his long prior association with the cities of the plain, eventually resulted in his not only again living in Sodom but also in his being actively involved within the affairs of the city ([Genesis 19:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.1&t=NKJV) [affairs of a city were carried on by men seated at the gate, as was Lot]).

Abraham, during this same time though, dwelled in the high country, removed from the cities of the plain. And, apart from instances such as his rescue of Lot and his intercession on behalf of the righteous in Sodom ([Genesis 14:14-16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.14-16&t=NKJV); [18:23-33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+18.23-33&t=NKJV)), the affairs of the people in the Jordan plain were of no moment to him.

Thus, when the day arrived for the destruction of the cities of the plain — as the day will arrive for the destruction of the present world system — two completely contrasting saved individuals can be seen. And that’s what is in view in [Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV), along with fruit bearing in each sphere — *one of value, the other worthless* (*cf*. [1 Corinthians 3:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+3.12&t=NKJV)).

Some Christians have been allowed to go on and see that which is taught concerning Melchizedek. Consequently, their interest doesn’t lie in the things of the Jordan plain but in the things of the high country. *And they dwell where their interest lies*.

Other Christians though, as Lot, have not been allowed to go on and see that which is taught concerning Melchizedek (and, invariably, for the same reason set forth in Lot’s life). Consequently, their interest doesn’t lie in the things of the high country but in those things of the valley instead. *And they too dwell where their interest lies*.

2) Escape From Sodom

The Jordan plain with its cities was destroyed during Abraham and Lot’s day by “*brimstone and fire*” from heaven ([Genesis 19:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.24&t=NKJV), [25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.25&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Deuteronomy 29:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Deuteronomy+29.23&t=NKJV)). And though Lot was delivered from Sodom prior to this destruction, his deliverance was, as in the words of [1 Corinthians 3:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+3.15&t=NKJV), “*so as through fire*.”

Prior to this destruction, Lot was placed outside Sodom and commanded,

*Escape for your life! Do not look behind you nor stay anywhere in the plain. Escape to the mountain, lest you be destroyed*. ([Genesis 19:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.17&t=NKJV))

Note what’s involved in this four-part command. First, “*Escape for you life* [‘soul’].”

This is the saving of the soul/life. Physical life in this instance? Yes! But far more than just the physical is involved, as becomes evident from the remainder of the command.

The next three parts relate how the soul/life can be saved:

1) “*Do not look behind you*” (*cf*. [Luke 9:62](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+9.62&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 12:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.1-2&t=NKJV)).

2) “*nor stay anywhere in the plain*” (don’t remain in the low-lying country [equivalent to Egypt]).

3) “*Escape to the mountain*” (a “mountain” is used in Scripture symbolizing *a kingdom*, particularly *Christ’s coming Kingdom* [*cf*. [Isaiah 2:1-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+2.1-5&t=NKJV); [Daniel 2:35](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+2.35&t=NKJV), [44-45](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Daniel+2.44-45&t=NKJV); [Matthew 17:1-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+17.1-5&t=NKJV)]).

(Note: Contrary to some English translations, the word “mountain” in the Hebrew text is singular, as in the KJV. The reference is to a “mountain” symbolizing *a kingdom*, not to “mountains” symbolizing *kingdoms*. A distinction between “mountain” and “mountains” in this respect can be seen in [Isaiah 2:2-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+2.2-3&t=NKJV):

. . . *the mountain of the LORD'S house* [the kingdom of Christ] *shall be established on the top of the mountains* [all the individual earthly kingdoms] . . . .”)

The escape *from the plain to the mountain* is an escape *from Egypt to Canaan* — to that land associated with the coming kingdom. This is where one’s attention is to be centered. This is where he is to dwell.

Then the last part of the verse relates that which will happen to a person should he not follow the Lord’s command in this respect: “*lest you be destroyed*.” That is, he will be destroyed by that which will itself be destroyed; and, as a consequence, he will lose his soul/life.

Lot though had no concept of that which was being stated; and, in reality, even though the Lord had given him this four-part command, he couldn’t follow it.

His spiritual senses had not been sufficiently developed or exercised. He could do no more than act after a carnal fashion, which he did ([Genesis 19:19-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.19-20&t=NKJV)). And this is the apparent reason why the Lord, apart from remonstrance, honored his request to be allowed to go to Zoar instead of the mountain ([Genesis 19:21-23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.21-23&t=NKJV)).

However, Zoar — a city in the plain, spared for Lot — wasn’t the last stop. After the destruction of the other cities of the plain, Lot became afraid to dwell in Zoar and moved out into the mountain to which he had previously been commanded to escape.

But, unlike Abraham, Lot dwelled on the mountain in “*a cave*” (Genesis 19:30) rather than standing in a place “*before the Lord*” ([Genesis 19:27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+19.27&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Genesis 18:22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+18.22&t=NKJV)). He, in effect, dwelled in a place of *shame* rather than in a place of *honor*.

And therein is the account of two pilgrims who governed their lives after two entirely different fashions, one day arriving at the same destination and finding themselves occupying *diametrically opposed positions, completely commensurate with the fashion in which they had governed their lives during their previous pilgrim journey*.

Thus will it be with Christians *on the Mountain* in that coming day.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Seven

**Things that Accompany Salvation**

*But, beloved, we are confident of better things concerning you, yes, things that accompany salvation, though we speak in this manner.*

*For God is not unjust to forget your work and labor of love that you have shown toward His name, in that you have ministered to the saints, and do minister.*

*And we desire that each one of you show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope until the end,*

*that you do not become sluggish, but imitate those who through faith and patience inherit the promises*. ([Hebrews 6:9-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.9-12&t=NKJV))

In the third of the five major warnings in Hebrews, the writer first dealt with the negative side of matters. He began by revealing that the recipients of his message were spiritually immature ([Hebrews 5:11-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11-14&t=NKJV)). Then, immediately following, he exhorted these spiritually immature Christians to “*go on to perfection* [‘maturity’]” ([Hebrews 6:1-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-6&t=NKJV)).

Continuing from this point, by way of illustration, drawing from nature, he looked at both sides of the matter from both positive and negative aspects ([Hebrews 6:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7-8&t=NKJV)). Then, the writer turned entirely to the positive side to finish the exhortation that he had begun in verse one ([Hebrews 6:9-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.9-12&t=NKJV)).

Verse nine could perhaps be better understood by translating:

*But, beloved, though we are speaking this way, we are persuaded better things of you, things that accompany* [*i.e*., things that have to do with] *salvation*.” (*ref*. NIV)

Concerning that to which the writer referred — that which he had been speaking about — he had begun by dealing with the fact that the recipients of his message were *“dull of hearing,” babes* in Christ ([Hebrews 5:11-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11-14&t=NKJV)). Then he dealt with exhorting Christians to go on to maturity ([Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV)), though God may not allow some Christians to go on ([Hebrews 6:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3&t=NKJV)). And the reason God may not allow some to go on is then given — the possibility of a Christian who had been allowed to go on to maturity later falling away, resulting in shame and reproach being brought upon Christ ([Hebrews 6:4-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.4-6&t=NKJV)).

And the writer then called attention to a type of fruit bearing from the world of nature to illustrate the preceding. Such could only be comparable to bringing forth “*thorns and briers*,” which would be “*rejected . . . whose end is to be burned*” ([Hebrews 6:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.8&t=NKJV)).

But before paralleling *falling away* with the thought of bringing forth fruit comparable to “*thorns and briers,*” the writer introduced another type fruit bearing — comparable to bringing forth “*herbs useful for those by whom it is cultivated*” ([Hebrews 6:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.7&t=NKJV)) — anticipating the positive side of the matter that is continued in [Hebrews 6:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.9&t=NKJV).

The nurturing source for this type fruit is “*the rain* [from heaven],” and this fruit is associated with “*blessings from God*.” And both the nurturing source and the blessings come *from above* (*cf*. [John 3:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.3&t=NKJV), [5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.5&t=NKJV); [1 John 2:29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+2.29&t=NKJV); [3:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+3.9&t=NKJV); [5:1-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+5.1-5&t=NKJV)). The thought has to do with *fruit bearing through the proper nurturing source, followed by blessings from God*.

Contextually, for a Christian, this would have to do with drinking in the Water of life, the Word of God, which comes from above (*cf*. [John 2:6-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+2.6-9&t=NKJV); [4:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+4.14&t=NKJV)); and, *through normal growth and activity after this fashion* (*feeding upon the Word, and, at the same time, allowing works to emanate out of faith* [faithfulness]), *the individual would mature in the faith and bring forth fruit of a proper kind*. That is, as illustrated from the world of nature, he would bring forth “*herbs useful for those by whom it is cultivated*” rather than “*thorns and briers*.”

Better Things

The recipients of this message were exhorted to leave the infantile things upon which they had been feeding and go on unto maturity. They were exhorted to stop laying foundations and begin building upon the foundational truths that they had already been taught ([Hebrews 6:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1-2&t=NKJV)). And the writer was persuaded “*better things*” of them than a falling away in the process, with its corresponding fruit bearing, described by the words, “*thorns and briers*” ([Hebrews 6:3-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.3-9&t=NKJV)).

Within the text, “*better things*” are the “*things that accompany* [‘have to do with’] *salvation*.” One parallels the other in this respect.

Or, to state the matter another way, that which is encompassed within the expression “*better things*” from verse nine is associated with fruit bearing from verse seven, which, in turn, is intimately connected with works from verse ten (works emanating out of faithfulness, resulting in fruit bearing of a proper type); and the goal in view — through this interrelated process of faith and works, resulting in fruit bearing — is “*salvation*” ([Hebrews 6:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.9&t=NKJV)).

Viewing the matter within the revealed scope or fashion, one should easily be able to see *what salvation is in view*. It can’t be the salvation presently possessed by every Christian ([Ephesians 2:8-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.8-9&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 1:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.3&t=NKJV)), for our presently possessed salvation cannot, after any fashion, be associated with man’s works, with fruit bearing. The salvation presently possessed by every Christian is a free gift that rests entirely upon the finished work of Christ. And not only has this work been completed, but God is satisfied with His Son’s finished work. Nothing can ever be added or taken away ([John 19:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+19.30&t=NKJV)).

The salvation referred to in [Hebrews 6:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.9&t=NKJV) is the same salvation to which the writer referred earlier in the warning ([Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV)). And, prior to that, he had referred to this salvation as “*so great salvation*” ([Hebrews 2:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+2.3&t=NKJV)). Then later in the book he refers to this salvation in connection with Christ’s return ([Hebrews 9:27-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+9.27-28&t=NKJV)). And then after that he refers to the same salvation as “*the saving of the soul*” ([Hebrews 10:38-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.38-39&t=NKJV)).

The salvation in view is connected with *a future inheritance* ([Hebrews 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.2&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.14&t=NKJV)), which is acquired “*through faith and patience*” ([Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV), [15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.15&t=NKJV)). It is “*the hope set before us*,” which is “*an anchor of the soul*” ([Hebrews 6:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.18-19&t=NKJV)).

This is the salvation with which Hebrews concerns itself throughout. *The entire book deals with this salvation, not with the salvation that Christians presently possess*. And when an individual grasps this fundamental truth, not only will the book of Hebrews begin to open to his understanding but so will numerous other sections of Scripture as well.

1) Salvation By Grace Through Faith

Let it forever be said that a Christian’s presently possessed eternal salvation was acquired completely separate from any works or merit on unredeemed man’s part. Works or merit, pertaining to eternal salvation, *all* have to do with Christ’s finished work at Calvary; and man is saved solely on the basis of *that which Christ has done*, not on the basis *of anything that man has done, is doing, or will ever do*.

The simple fact is that Christ completed the work, in its entirety, because unredeemed man is totally incapable of acting in this realm, even in the minutest degree. Not only is he *dead*, rendering him powerless to act, but he is also *alienated from God*. And apart from Christ’s action on his behalf, he would forever remain in *his present dead, alienated state* ([Ephesians 2:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.1&t=NKJV), [12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.12&t=NKJV)).

To illustrate man’s inability to act in this realm, refer to a Greek word used in [1 Corinthians 15:52](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.52&t=NKJV) — the word *atomos*, from which we derive our English word “atom.” The word is translated in this verse, “*a moment*.” The reference is to the length of the time which will elapse within the scope of Christians being removed from the earth (raised from the dead and translated) and appearing in the Lord’s presence in the air. This will occur in an *atomos* of time, further described as comparable to the time-lapse in “*the twinkling of an eye*.”

The word *atomos* has to do with “minuteness”; and in [1 Corinthians 15:52](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.52&t=NKJV) it refers to the smallest unit into which time can be divided, beyond which there can be no further division. A microsecond (one millionth of a second) is a common expression used in our computerized world today. But there are divisions beyond that — a billionth of a second, a trillionth of a second, etc.

*Atomos*, in [1 Corinthians 15:52](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.52&t=NKJV), referring to “time,” goes to the farthest point conceivable. This word refers to a particle of time so minute that the only way to really describe it is through the use of the word *atomos* itself. That is how fast the future resurrection and translation of Christians will occur.

Now, bring the word *atomos* over into the realm of works. Insofar as man’s eternal salvation is concerned, he cannot do even an *atomos* of work in this realm. It is *impossible* for him to perform even the most minute particle of any type of work conceivable, for, in the spiritual realm, he is *dead*.

And salvation, in its totality, has to do with *a spiritual birth from above* — a realm in which unredeemed man is totally incapable of acting. In order for man to act in the spiritual, to even a degree described by the word *atomos*, he first has to be *made alive spiritually*. He first has to pass “*from death to life*” ([John 5:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+5.24&t=NKJV)). And this is effected through — *only and completely through* — the birth from above.

All man can do is receive that which has already been done on his behalf. He can do no more than “*believe on* [put his trust, reliance in]” the One who has performed the Work on his behalf. This is the clear testimony of Scripture *from the opening verses of Genesis* (depicting events that occurred 4,000 years preceding Calvary [and also prior to this period]) *to the closing verses of Revelation* (depicting events that will occur 3,000 years following Calvary [and also after this period]).

God’s means for redeeming fallen man *never change* throughout Scripture. God established a first-mention principle relative to the matter at the very beginning of His revelation to man, in the opening verses of chapter one of Genesis; and once the matter had been established after this fashion, *no change could ever occur.*

Scripture, at the very beginning, presents the matter of man’s passage “*from death to life*” as *a work performed entirely through divine intervention*. The Spirit moved, God spoke, and light came into existence ([Genesis 1:2-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.2-3&t=NKJV) [2b]). The ruined creation ([Genesis 1:2a](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.2a&t=NKJV)) had no part in the matter at the beginning, and a subsequent ruined creation (man) can have no part in the matter at any later point in time (*ref*. the author’s book, [Bible One - From Egypt to Canaan by Arlen Chitwood](http://www.bibleone.net/E2C.htm), chapters 5-8).

To say that individuals were saved or will be saved via other means in either past or future dispensations (through keeping the law, through any type of works, etc.) is a total misunderstanding of that which God has established as unchangeable at the very beginning of His Word.

Unsaved man simply cannot act in the spiritual realm. *Such is impossible*. And there is no such thing as man, at any point in his history (past, present, or future) being partly saved and able to perform works to complete his salvation. It is either *all* or *nothing*. Man has either *passed* “*from death to life*” or *he is still dead*.

As stated in [Jonah 2:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jonah+2.9&t=NKJV), “*Salvation is of the LORD*.” It has always been that way, it remains that way today, and it always will be that way.

2) Salvation of the Soul

The salvation of the soul though is another matter entirely. The spiritual birth from above — salvation by grace through faith — has to do with man’s *spirit*, not with his soul. Redeemed man, a trichotomous being, has a redeemed spirit, an unredeemed soul (that part of man that is in the process of being redeemed), and an unredeemed body (not presently being redeemed, as the soul, but to be redeemed at Christ’s return).

Insofar as man’s *spirit* is concerned, salvation is a finished matter. This is the part of man that was made alive at the time of the birth from above ([Ephesians 2:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.1&t=NKJV), [5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.5&t=NKJV), [8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.8&t=NKJV)). Then, redeemed man’s soul is in the process of being saved (*cf*. [1 Corinthians 1:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+1.18&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 1:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.14&t=NKJV); [10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV)), a salvation to be realized in its completeness (or not realized) at the time Christians appear before the judgment seat of Christ at the end of the present dispensation ([1 Peter 1:4-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.4-9&t=NKJV)).

And the salvation — “*redemption*” — of the body is future as well and will be realized at the time of the adoption (actually, the structure of the Greek text in [Romans 8:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+8.23&t=NKJV) shows the redemption of the body to be synonymous with the adoption), which is part and parcel with the saving of the soul.

Thus man, as a trichotomous being, *has been saved, is being saved, and is about to be saved*. Salvation, within its complete scope, is not only past but is also present and future as well.

However, one must exercise care when dealing with these different aspects of salvation so as not to confuse one with the other. Verses of Scripture that pertain to one *must not be removed from their contexts and applied to the other*. If this is done, the end result will be two-fold:

1) *Confusion concerning the salvation message on the one hand.*

2) *Corruption, distortion, or destruction of parts or the whole of the salvation message on the other hand*.

For example, the salvation of the spirit is dependent entirely upon the finished work of Christ at Calvary, but the salvation of the soul is dependent on the works of the individual who has passed “*from death to life*.” Such works though *must emanate out of faithfulness* ([James 2:14-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.14-26&t=NKJV)) — faithfulness exercised by the one now in a position to act in the spiritual realm — and it is these works (or lack of these works, resulting from unfaithfulness) which will come under review at the judgment seat (cf. [1 Corinthians 3:11-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+3.11-15&t=NKJV)).

And one can easily see what would happen if a person took Scriptures having to do with the present aspect of salvation and applied them to the past aspect of salvation, or vice versa. Man’s works would either be brought over into an area where works of this nature cannot exist (brought over into the message of salvation by grace through faith), or such works would be rendered meaningless by trying to place the message of salvation by grace through faith (where man’s works cannot exist) within the present aspect of salvation (where man’s works must be operative).

(The preceding would be comparable to going to God’s work of restoring the ruined creation in [Genesis 1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1&t=NKJV) and moving His works from day one into His works in days two through six, or vice versa.

On day one, the earth was entirely passive, for the earth was completely incapable, in and of itself, of effecting restoration. *All was of divine intervention* — the Spirit of God moved, God spoke, and light came into existence [[Genesis 1:2-5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.2-5&t=NKJV) (2b)]. But once the light had begun to shine out of the darkness [[John 1:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.5&t=NKJV); [2 Corinthians 4:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=2Corinthians+4.6&t=NKJV)] and the earth had emerged from its watery grave, the earth began to bring forth [[Genesis 1:9-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.9-11&t=NKJV)].

And so it is with ruined man. Divine intervention has to occur first, allowing light to shine out of darkness and man to be removed from his watery grave, so to speak. Only then can he, as the earth, bring forth.

These things must be viewed and understood in the same divine framework and order in which they were established in an unchangeable fashion in the opening verses of Genesis.)

Through the salvation effected by the birth from above (which has to do with *the spirit*), man has been placed in a position where he can perform works acceptable or pleasing to God (which has to do with *the soul*). Works are now possible, for he now has spiritual life and can exercise faith in the realm from which man’s works can ensue.

That is, *after* he has passed “*from death to life*” he can then exercise *faith* in his spiritual life — a life that he did not possess prior to the birth from above — and works, pleasing to God, *can emanate out of faithfulness of this nature*.

It is this aspect of salvation with which the book of Hebrews deals. *The warnings apply to the saving or the losing of the soul, never the spirit.* The former can be forfeited, but not the latter; and a person must be in possession of the latter before anything in the former would even apply in his life.

(For a comprehensive treatment of the overall subject of the saving of the soul, see the author’s books, [Salvation of the Soul BOOK](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/salvation-of-the-soul.php), in this site, and [Bible One - From Egypt to Canaan by Arlen Chitwood](http://www.bibleone.net/E2C.htm).)

Work And Labor Of Love

The “*better things*” being manifested by those whom the writer addressed in verse nine of chapter six are described through the use of two words in verse ten — *work* and *love*. They were manifesting a “*work and labor of love*” with respect to Christ *through* ministering to other Christians.

Such a ministry could take any number of forms — from giving “*a cup of water*” to “*teaching and admonishing one another*” ([Mark 9:41](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Mark+9.41&t=NKJV); [Colossians 3:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+3.16&t=NKJV)). And there is an underlying principle upon which the inseparable connection between ministering with respect to Christ and ministering to others rests (as in [Hebrews 6:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.10&t=NKJV)), which is clearly revealed in [Matthew 25:31-46](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.31-46&t=NKJV).

The passage in gospel of Matthew has to do with a judgment of two classes of saved Gentiles coming out of the Tribulation, and *the revealed principle remains unchanged*. This principle is the same in the gospel of Matthew, the book of Hebrews, or any other place and time in Scripture that touches on the matter. It is *an unchangeable part of the unchangeable Word*.

According to [Matthew 25:34ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.34ff&t=NKJV), these Gentiles coming out of the Tribulation will be judged on the basis of specific works, necessitating either faith or the lack of faith preceding their works or their lack of works. And they, accordingly, will have previously been divided into two groups ([Matthew 25:33](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.33&t=NKJV)):

1) Those exercising faith, with works following.

2) Those not exercising faith, with no works following.

Christ will judge *the faithful* first, on the basis of their works ([Matthew 25:34-40](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.34-40&t=NKJV)). After that, He will judge t*he unfaithful,* on the basis of the absence of works ([Matthew 25:41-46](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.41-46&t=NKJV)).

Neither judgment will have anything whatsoever to do with the eternal salvation of those being judged (no more so than issues at the judgment seat of Christ will have to do with a Christian’s eternal salvation). The entirety of the judgment surrounding both groups will occur solely on the basis of the works of those being judged (something that can never have anything to do with man’s eternal salvation). But note the principle drawn from the judgment of both groups.

Both groups are judged *solely on the basis of their actions* (dispensing or not dispensing meat, drink; ministering or not ministering to others). *And note that metaphors are being used throughout* — sheep, goats, meat, drink — the same as previously seen different places earlier in the same discourse ([Matthew 24:45-25:30](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.45-25.30&t=NKJV)).

Then the principle is clearly given: By those in one group, *the faithful*, ministering in this manner, they had ministered to Christ Himself. That is, they had accorded Christ the same treatment that they accorded those to whom they had ministered ([Matthew 25:37-40](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.37-40&t=NKJV)).

The same thing is again taught — though from a negative aspect — relative to Christ’s dealings with the second group, *the unfaithful*. Those in this group had not ministered in the same manner at all. There was no exercise of faith, with no works issuing forth.

And the principle is again clearly revealed, though reversed: by not exercising faith, with no ministry following, these individuals, unlike the faithful, had not ministered to Christ. That is, they had accorded Christ the same treatment that they had rendered to those to whom they had been called to minister ([Matthew 25:44-45](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.44-45&t=NKJV)).

(For additional information on [Matthew 25:31-46](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.31-46&t=NKJV), refer to the author’s book, [The Most High Ruleth BOOK](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/gods-word-one.php#The%20Most%20High%20Ruleth%20BOOK), Chapter 3, in this site.)

In [Hebrews 6:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.10&t=NKJV) the principle remains the same. Through ministering “*to the saints*” these Christians had shown the same “*work and labor of love*” “*toward His* [Christ’s] *name*.” That is, in the light of the way that the matter is set forth in [Matthew 25:34ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+25.34ff&t=NKJV), they, in reality, were ministering to Christ Himself through their ministry to the saints.

These Christians were performing works because of their love for the brethren. But these works were not emanating out of love *per se*. Rather, these works, along with the manifested love, were emanating out of *faith*.

“Faith” must come *first*; and even though love is placed above faith in the sense of greatness ([1 Corinthians 13:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+13.13&t=NKJV)), love cannot exist apart from faith. This is fundamental and primary. Apart from faith there can be neither love for the brethren nor a ministry to the brethren. The matter must be viewed as it is seen in Hebrews chapter eleven:

*“By faith Abel . . . By faith Enoch . . . By faith Noah . . . .”* The entire pilgrim walk is as stated in [Romans 1:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+1.17&t=NKJV):

. . . *from faith to faith: as it is written. The just shall live by faith*. (*cf*. [Habakkuk 2:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Habakkuk+2.4&t=NKJV))

And the entirety of the matter is about the saving of the soul. Note the two verses leading into [Hebrews 11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11&t=NKJV):

*Now the just shall live by faith; but if anyone* [if any of the just, exercising faith] *draws back* [stops exercising faith], *My soul has no pleasure in him.*

*But we are not of those who draw back to perdition* [‘destruction,’ ‘ruin’], *but of those who believe to the saving of the soul* [*lit*., ‘of faith with respect to a saving of the soul’]. ([Hebrews 10:38-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.38-39&t=NKJV))

Then chapter eleven continues, without any type of break,

*Now faith* [contextually, to a saving of the soul] *is .* . . .” ([Hebrews 11:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11.1&t=NKJV))

Consequently, there must first be “*faith*” (i.e., “faithfulness” on the part of the individual — simply “believing” that which God has said). Then “*love*” and resulting “*works*” can issue forth. Love is the motivator for the works, but the source for love is the same as the source for works. They both emanate out of faith (*cf*. [James 2:14-26](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+2.14-26&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 1:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.9&t=NKJV)).

Full Assurance Of Hope

The recipients of this message had been praised for their “*work and labor of love*” ([Hebrews 6:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.10&t=NKJV)), and their actions were mentioned after this fashion for a purpose. Immediately following, in [Hebrews 6:11-12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.11-12&t=NKJV), the writer uses their faithfulness in this realm in order to exhort them in another realm. He turns from one thought to another, and the thought to which he turns is the same thought that is emphasized over and over throughout the epistle. At this point in the book it is seen to be — both textually and contextually — *his one driving, burning desire underlying everything that he wrote in the epistle.*

In order to grasp the full force of the writer’s frame of mind and that which is being said, note the word “*desire*.” In the Greek text, the preposition *epi* is prefixed to the word translated “*desire*” in the English text (forming *epithumeo*), intensifying the word. A more literal rendering when bringing the thought conveyed by the intensified Greek word over into English would be, “earnestly desire.”

Note, for example, the difference between how the word *agonizomai* (strive) is used in [Luke 13:24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+13.24&t=NKJV) without the preposition *epi* prefixed and in [Jude 1:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jude+1.3&t=NKJV) with the preposition prefixed. In Luke the word is simply translated “*strive*,” but in Jude the word is translated “*earnestly contend* [or, ‘earnestly strive’].” The passages set forth a *striving* with respect to entering the “*strait gate*,” and *an earnest striving* with respect to “*the faith*.”

[Hebrews 6:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.11&t=NKJV) reveals *an earnest desire* on the part of the writer to see those to whom he was writing expressing *the same diligence* in their lives “to [‘toward,’ or, ‘with respect to’] *the full assurance of hope*” that they had shown in their “*work and labor of love*” among the saints. He called attention to their present positive actions as they ministered among the saints and exhorted them to manifest the same positive actions with respect to “*the full assurance of hope*.”

What though is meant by “*the full assurance of hope*”? This is the heart of the matter, with the whole thought turning on these words.

The words “*full assurance*” is the translation of a Greek word that conveys the thought of *full conviction, certainty, assurance wrought through understanding*. Note the same word in this respect as it is used in [Colossians 2:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+2.2&t=NKJV) and [Hebrews 10:22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.22&t=NKJV). In [Colossians 2:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+2.2&t=NKJV), the word “*understanding*” is really not part of the strict definition though. But the thought would have to be there by implication, for there could be no confident conviction or confident assurance apart from an understanding of the matter in view.

And, viewing the context, the whole overall thought of “*understanding*” could only fit perfectly within that which is stated in [Hebrews 6:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.11&t=NKJV), for the verse appears toward the end of a section in which the main thrust of the entire matter has to do with an exhortation to “*go on to perfection* [‘maturity’]” ([Hebrews 6:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1&t=NKJV)ff). The end result of this maturity is presented in [Hebrews 6:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.11&t=NKJV) (further explained in [Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV)) as bringing them into a position where they could understand and, consequently, have a confident, expectant conviction of *the hope set before them* (in the sense of one day realizing this hope).

The “*hope*” itself is simply *that blessed hope* from [Titus 2:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+2.13&t=NKJV), associated with the “*appearing of the glory of the great God and our Savior Jesus Christ*” (ASV). In [Titus 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+1.2&t=NKJV); [3:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+3.7&t=NKJV) this hope is clearly revealed to be associated with *an inheritance awaiting the saved that* will be realized in the coming age.

Note [Titus 3:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+3.7&t=NKJV). There is first *a justification*; then there is *an inheritance* awaiting the justified, connected with the “*hope of eternal life*.” The words “*eternal life*,” from *aionios* in the Greek text, could be better translated “life for the age” in this passage. This word is used different places in the Greek text in the sense of both “eternal” and “age-lasting,” and the manner in which it is used in any given passage will always be governed by its textual usage.

(For additional information on the preceding, refer to the author’s book, [Salvation of the Soul BOOK](https://www.koffeekupkandor.com/salvation-of-the-soul.php), Chapter 6, “Hope, Inheritance, Salvation.”)

The manner in which *aionios* is used in [Titus 3:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+3.7&t=NKJV) is evident. The justified (those in possession of eternal life) cannot be made “*heirs according to the hope of eternal life*.” There is no “hope” connected with eternal life (the salvation of the spirit, which is ours through simply believing on the Lord Jesus Christ [[John 3:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+3.16&t=NKJV)]). “Hope” is something that *may or may not be realized*, and “hope” in Scripture is connected with the *saving of the soul, life for the age*, *the inheritance awaiting Christians* (*e.g*., *cf*. [Hebrews 6:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.18-19&t=NKJV); [10:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.23&t=NKJV), [36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV) [[Hebrews 10:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.23&t=NKJV) should literally read, “Let us hold fast the confession of the hope . . . .”]).

And this “*hope*” is exactly where the writer of Hebrews wanted those to whom he was writing to fix their attention. He earnestly desired that every one of them would show the same diligence that they were expressing in their “*work and labor of love*” *to a full conviction and expectation of the hope set before them*. And he wanted them to hold this conviction and expectation “unto the end.”

(One can easily see, from these verses, a parallel problem existing in Christendom today. Christians involve themselves in numerous ministries — some with “diligence” — but how many of these same Christians know anything about “*the full assurance of hope*”? How many exhibit the same “diligence” *in this realm?*)

Through Faith And Patience

Continuing with this same line of thought, the writer called attention to something that he had previously stated (*cf*. [Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV); [6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV)); and he then brought the exhortation to a close ([Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV)), prior to once again going back to the Old Testament Scriptures to furnish the background and support for the subject under discussion ([Hebrews 5:13ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.13ff&t=NKJV)).

Those being addressed were spiritually immature, but the exhortation, as previously given, was, “*let us go on . .* . .” ([Hebrews 6:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.1&t=NKJV)). In verse twelve, the word “*slothful*” (KJV) is a translation of the same word rendered “*dull of hearing*” in the previous chapter ([Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV)). The writer used the word in chapter five to best describe the present immature condition of those in view. And now, in chapter six, he uses the same descriptive word again as he exhorts these Christians to not remain in their present immature state but to go on to maturity, *for a revealed purpose*.

To perhaps better understand exactly where the writer had been and was going with this whole line of thought, note verse eleven and the first part of verse twelve in a more literal rendering, with a few explanatory thoughts:

*And we earnestly desire that every one of you* [those in [Hebrews 5:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11ff&t=NKJV)] *do show the same diligence* [as exhibited in their ministry among the saints ([Hebrews 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.10&t=NKJV))] *with respect to a full conviction and expectation of the hope* [derived through knowledge, as they moved from immaturity to maturity] *to the end* [that is, hold this ‘hope unto the end,’ with a full conviction and expectation that it will one day be realized]:

*In order that you might not remain dull of hearing* [[Hebrews 5:11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.11&t=NKJV) (or ‘slothful’ as rendered)], *but .* . . .”

The latter part of [Hebrews 5:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12&t=NKJV), immediately following the preceding rendering, then provides the stated purpose for the entire exhortation; and the remainder of the chapter provides background and support from the Old Testament. The remainder of the chapter is thus simply Scripture substantiating, supporting, and explaining Scripture.

Those being addressed were exhorted to go on unto maturity so that they could “*imitate* [‘imitators,’ in the sense of governing their pilgrim walk] *of those who through faith and patience inherit the promises*” ([Hebrews 5:12b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12b&t=NKJV)).

There is a future inheritance in view (which is the manner in which the book of Hebrews begins [[Hebrews 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.2&t=NKJV)] and continues [[Hebrews 1:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.14&t=NKJV)], revealing an inheritance belonging to firstborn sons [*cf*. [Hebrews 2:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+2.10&t=NKJV); [12:16-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.16-17&t=NKJV), [23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.23&t=NKJV)]); and Christians will come into a realization of this future inheritance only through governing their present pilgrim walk after a manner described by the words, “*faith and patience.*”

Note the exact words of the text:

*. . . through faith and patience* [*lit*., ‘patient endurance’] *inherit the promises*” ([Hebrews 5:12b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.12b&t=NKJV)).

“Patient endurance” would go hand in hand with “faith,” for there could not be a continued walk by faith apart from patient endurance ([James 1:2-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+1.2-4&t=NKJV)).

And this is exactly what one finds at the capstone of the book of Hebrews ([Hebrews 11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11&t=NKJV); [12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12&t=NKJV) [12a]), leading into the heart of the last of the five major warnings ([Hebrews 12:16-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.16-17&t=NKJV)) — a warning that deals specifically with *the rights of the firstborn.*

Chapter eleven is the great chapter on *faith* in Scripture, but this chapter must be understood in conjunction with the preceding ten chapters. Throughout chapter eleven, drawn entirely from the experiences of faithful Old Testament saints as they patiently endured under various trials and testing, one will find the words, “*By faith . . . By faith . . . By faith* . . . .”

*That is the key to inheriting the promises.* The matter is simply as stated, “*By faith*” — remaining faithful (continuing to believe God, a continuance involving patient endurance) under various trials and testing.

These Old Testament saints,

*. . . all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off were assured of them, embraced them and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth*.” ([Hebrews 11:13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11.13&t=NKJV))

*They exercised faithfulness* with respect *“to the saving of the soul”* ([Hebrews 10:39b](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.39b&t=NKJV)).

Then note how [Hebrews 12:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.1&t=NKJV) begins:

*Therefore we* [Christians] *also, since we are surrounded by so great a cloud of witnesses* [the Old Testament saints in [Hebrews 11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11&t=NKJV)], *let us .* . . .

The implication is clear. These Old Testament saints ran the race after a particular fashion, with a goal in view; and Christians are to run the race after the same fashion, with the same goal in view — *the saving of the soul, which is with a view to an inheritance out ahead, to be realized in the coming age.*

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Chapter Eight

**Inheriting the Promises**

*That you do not become sluggish, but imitate those who through faith and patience inherit the promises.*

*For when God made a promise to Abraham, because He could swear by no one greater, He swore by Himself,*

*saying, “Surely blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply you.”*

*And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise.*

*For men indeed swear by the greater, and an oath for confirmation is for them an end of all dispute.*

*Thus God, determining to show more abundantly to the heirs of promise the immutability of His counsel, confirmed it by an oath,*

*that by two immutable things, in which it is impossible for God to lie, we might have strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold of the hope set before us.*

*This hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and steadfast, and which enters the Presence behind the veil,*

*where the Forerunner has entered for us, even Jesus, having become High Priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek.* ([Hebrews 6:12-20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12-20&t=NKJV))

Jesus Christ is God’s appointed “*heir of all things*,” and the ages (not only time but all that exists within time [*cf*. [John 1:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.3&t=NKJV)]) have been brought into existence in connection with the Son’s activity as God’s appointed “*heir of all things*” within these ages ([Hebrews 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.2&t=NKJV)).

*This is the manner in which the book of Hebrews begins, which sets the tone for the entire epistle.*

The Son is *at the center of everything in Scripture*, beginning with [Genesis 1:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.1&t=NKJV); all of the Old Testament is about Him ([Luke 24:25-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.25-27&t=NKJV), [44](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Luke+24.44&t=NKJV); [John 5:39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+5.39&t=NKJV), [45-47](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+5.45-47&t=NKJV)); He is the Word, which is God, made flesh ([John 1:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.1-2&t=NKJV), [14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=John+1.14&t=NKJV)); and His heirship is *central to all things that Scripture reveals about the Son*, beginning at the same point in Genesis (*cf*. [Psalm 8:1-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+8.1-9&t=NKJV); [1 Corinthians 15:45-50](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Corinthians+15.45-50&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 1:4-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.4-13&t=NKJV)).

Man was created for *a purpose*, which was revealed at the time of his creation ([Genesis 1:26-28](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.26-28&t=NKJV)). He was created to “*have dominion*.” And man being created to have dominion has its *basis* in God having previously appointed His Son, “*heir of all things*.”

Man lost his right to exercise dominion through the action of the first man, the first Adam. Man, through Adam’s action, found himself in a fallen state, necessitating redemption.

Then the second Man, the last Adam, subsequently paid redemption’s price through and by His finished work at Calvary; and man, through redemption, once again finds himself back in *a position wherein he can one day realize the purpose for his creation*.

The second Man, the last Adam, will realize His appointed position as “*heir of all things*” through and by exercising dominion over all of God’s creation (as it pertains to the earth). And He, along with numerous redeemed co-heirs, will exercise this dominion for 1,000 years, for the duration of the coming Messianic Era.

Thus, in the preceding sense, *the central subject of Scripture is not really redemption per se but that which redemption makes possible, with the One who paid redemption’s price seen at the center of all that redemption makes possible*.

Redemption entered the picture in Genesis *after* man found himself in a position wherein he could no longer realize the purpose for his creation, with redemption centering on *bringing man back into the position where he could one day realize this purpose* ([Genesis 3:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+3.15&t=NKJV), [21-24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+3.21-24&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Genesis 3:1-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+3.1-13&t=NKJV)). And redemption enters the picture today — or at any point in history — *for exactly the same purpose that it did 6,000 years ago*.

Unredeemed man is alienated from God and in no position to ever take the scepter; he is in no position to ever realize the purpose for his creation. He must *first* be redeemed. *Then, the purpose for man’s redemption, going back to the purpose for his creation, can one day be realize*d.

Thus, whether dealing with man’s creation, his fall, or provided redemption following the fall, *the same central purpose is always present*; and that purpose has to do with *man ultimately exercising dominion*:

1) *Man was created to exercise dominion*.

2) *Satan brought about his fall to prevent him from exercising dominion.*

3) *And redemption has been provided so man can be brought back into the position wherein he can one day exercise dominion, realizing the purpose for his creation in the beginning.*

The thought of man exercising dominion both precedes and follows redemption at any point in Scripture. It must, for this is the way matters are introduced in Genesis, establishing an unchangeable pattern.

It is as outlined in the opening part of the book of Hebrews. This book, as previously stated, opens by calling attention to the fact that the Son has been appointed “*heir of all things*” ([Hebrews 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.2&t=NKJV)).

Then reference is made to His redemptive work and His present position at God’s right hand ([Hebrews 1:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.3&t=NKJV)). And following this, the Spirit of God provides seven Messianic quotations from the Old Testament, pointing to that day when *the appointed Heir will come into possession of His inheritance* ([Hebrews 1:5-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.5-13&t=NKJV)). The order is exactly as seen in the opening three chapters of Genesis.

Hebrews begins by centering on the Son after this fashion. But, again, redemption provided by the Son is for *a purpose; and that purpose begins to be unfolded in the book immediately following the seven Messianic quotations by calling attention to the central purpose for the entire present dispensation*.

And that purpose is singular:

*The central purpose for the entire dispensation, in complete keeping with all things revealed in the Old Testament about the Son, is to acquire the co-heirs who will occupy the throne with the “heir of all things” during the coming day of His power* ([Hebrews 1:14ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.14ff&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Romans 8:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+8.17&t=NKJV)).

The second Man, the last Adam, has provided redemption so that fallen man (descending from the first man, the first Adam) can be brought back into the position for which he was created. *Thus, redemption is not an end in itself. Rather redemption is a means to an end*. The end is “heirship,” and redemption places the person in a position wherein he can one day come into a realization of this heirship.

It is as in the type of beginning in [Exodus 12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+12&t=NKJV). The death of the firstborn in Egypt was not an end in itself. That which occurred on the night of the Passover in Egypt was a means to an end. But the death of the firstborn *had to occur first.* The end of the matter revolved around an “inheritance” that lay in a land removed from Egypt, set before those passing through events surrounding the Passover.

And that is exactly what the book of Hebrews is about in a type-antitype structure. It is about man, who has been redeemed, for a revealed purpose.  *It is about redeemed man one day inheriting with the Son in a land removed from this earth.* *It is about redeemed man coming into possession of “so great salvation” in that coming “seventh day” — the seventh millennium — first spoken of in* [*Genesis 2:2-3*](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+2.2-3&t=NKJV) ([Hebrews 1:14-2:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+1.14-2.5&t=NKJV); [4:4-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+4.4-9&t=NKJV)).

(See the author’s book, [Bible One - From Egypt to Canaan by Arlen Chitwood](http://www.bibleone.net/E2C.htm), for a more comprehensive treatment of the preceding.)

God has set aside an entire dispensation lasting two millennia, during which He is calling out the co-heirs who will inherit with His Son during that coming day when the Son exercises dominion. And these co-heirs are being called out from among the redeemed.

Thus, in this respect, the central subject of Hebrews revolves around *matters beyond redemption*. The central subject of the book revolves around God’s dealings with the saved relative to *an inheritance in a land set before them*. It revolves around *redeemed man being brought into the position for which man was originally created*.

An original type involving saved man in Hebrews can be seen in the account involving Eve in [Genesis 2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+2&t=NKJV). Viewing the antitype, this chapter in Genesis presents Christ’s co-heirs from Hebrews occupying the position of consort queen, typified by Eve.

Christ is the second Man, the last Adam, typified by the first man, the first Adam ([Romans 5:14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+5.14&t=NKJV)). The redeemed of the present dispensation form His body ([Colossians 1:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+1.18&t=NKJV)); and as Eve was removed from Adam’s body to reign as consort queen with him (“*let them have dominion*” [both the male and the female; [Genesis 1:26-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+1.26-27&t=NKJV)]) so will the bride of Christ be removed from Christ’s body to reign as consort queen with Him.

Then in a subsequent type, *the central mission of the Holy Spirit to the earth during the present dispensation* is seen to center — not around redemption *per se* — *but around the purpose for redemption*. According to [Genesis 24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24&t=NKJV), the central mission of the Holy Spirit in the world today is *to acquire a bride for God’s Son*.

In [Genesis 23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+23&t=NKJV) the wife of Jehovah is seen set aside following Calvary (seen through events surrounding the death of Sarah, which follows the offering of Isaac [[Genesis 22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22&t=NKJV)]).

Then in [Genesis 25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+25&t=NKJV) Israel is seen restored through Abraham’s remarriage when he took Keturah as his wife. And between Sarah’s death ([Genesis 23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+23&t=NKJV)) and Abraham’s remarriage ([Genesis 25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+25&t=NKJV)), there is an entire chapter (sixty-seven verses) detailing events that occur between these two times — times that foreshadow God’s past and future dealings with Israel.

Events in [Genesis 24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24&t=NKJV) have to do with one central subject — *Abraham’s servant sent into the far country to acquire a bride for Abraham’s son, Isaac*. And the bride was to be acquired *only from within Abraham’s family* ([Genesis 24:3-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24.3-4&t=NKJV)).

Matters surrounding redemption, allowing unsaved man to become a member of the family, occur, in the type, back in [Genesis 22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22&t=NKJV) (the offering of Isaac); and the whole of that dealt with in [Genesis 24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24&t=NKJV) pertains to matters occurring within the family, foreshadowing matters occurring among the saved. Events in this chapter pertain to matters subsequent to and separate from redemption.

(More specifically, viewing the type and antitype together, the *basis* for redemption occurs through the Father offering the Son in [Genesis 22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22&t=NKJV) [typifying events surrounding Calvary], with redemption itself occurring throughout the time depicted by events in [Genesis 24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24&t=NKJV) [events throughout the present dispensation].

But, the fact remains, events in [Genesis 24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24&t=NKJV) do not deal with redemption *per se*. Events in this chapter deal with family members [typifying those already saved] and the search for the bride. And events in this chapter occur between Israel being set aside and Israel’s future restoration, which is where events during the present dispensation occur.)

The Holy Spirit, in the antitype of Abraham’s servant, is in the world today; and His primary mission revolves around calling out a bride for God’s Son. Redemption must occur first. The Spirit, on a separate and initial aspect of His work, must first breathe life into an individual, allowing that individual to pass from “*from death to life*”; and this places the individual within the company of the saved, within the company of those among whom the Spirit is presently conducting His search for the bride.

The redemptive work of the Spirit in this respect is fundamental and primary. But there is a purpose for redemption, and the realization of that purpose has to do with the Spirit’s work surrounding the acquisition of a bride for God’s Son during the present dispensation, with a view to the Son’s reign during the coming dispensation.

And, in this respect, the bride of Christ — in perfect accord with Eve being removed from Adam’s body ([Genesis 2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+2&t=NKJV)) or Rebekah being removed from the family of Abraham ([Genesis 24](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+24&t=NKJV)) — is to be acquired from the family of God. That is, the bride is to be called out from among the saved.

And events foreshadowed by those in Genesis chapters two and twenty-four, rather than events foreshadowed by those in Genesis chapter twenty-two, is where one finds himself in the book of Hebrews. This book deals with the Holy Spirit calling out a bride for God’s Son, offering to redeemed man the privilege and opportunity to one day participate in activities surrounding the bride.

*This book centers on a salvation out ahead, a rest, an inheritance. The book of Hebrews is about Christians one day entering into positions with the Son as co-heirs, comprising the Son’s bride, the one who will reign as consort queen in the antitype of Eve or Rebekah.*

Through Faith and Patience

Accordingly, Scripture clearly reveals, in numerous places, that a future position with God’s Son as co-heir is not something that a person automatically enters into on the basis of his position “*in Christ*.” Rather, *a Christian’s present actions* will determine *his future position* in this respect ([Romans 8:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+8.17&t=NKJV)).

The matter is probably stated in [Hebrews 6:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.12&t=NKJV) in the simplest terms to be found anyplace in Scripture. This verse reveals *two things* that must be present in a Christian’s life in order for him to have a part in God’s promise to Abraham in [Genesis 22:17-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17-18&t=NKJV) — “*faith and patience* [‘patient endurance’].” These two indispensables — two things that really encompass everything else — point to the Christian exercising “*faith*” throughout the pilgrim walk ([Romans 1:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+1.17&t=NKJV)) as he “*patiently endures*” under all the various trials and testing that come his way ([James 1:2-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+1.2-4&t=NKJV)).

But though the matter is stated in what would be considered a relatively simple manner, the journey along the route leading to the goal is far from simple or easy. To the contrary, it is difficult and hard. The pilgrim path is strewn with pitfalls all along the way. Nothing throughout the pilgrim walk really comes easy.

Nor are things intended to come easy. That’s not the way God arranged matters.

*Something of incalculable value — the greatest thing God has ever designed for redeemed man — is being offered to man through the ministry of the Holy Spirit in the world today; and man, because of the onslaught of Satan, has been called upon to fight, to struggle.*

*The bride, in the final analysis, will be made up of those interested enough in that which is being offered to pay the price.*

And a central crux of the matter involves the knowledge and resulting action of the enemy — the present world rulers (Satan and his angels) in heavenly places. Christ with His co-heirs will one day replace Satan and those ruling under him. Satan and his angels know this ([Ephesians 3:9-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+3.9-11&t=NKJV)), the warfare rages ([Ephesians 6:11ff](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+6.11ff&t=NKJV)), and the enemy will do everything within his power to prevent Christians from achieving victory in the present race of the faith.

But, on the other side of the picture, Christians have “*an Advocate* [Greek: *parakletos*, ‘One called alongside to help’] with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous” ([1 John 2:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+2.1&t=NKJV)) and a “*Forerunner*” presently seated at God’s right hand ([Psalm 110:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.1&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 6:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.20&t=NKJV)). And our “*Forerunner*” is the “*Author* [‘source’] *of eternal salvation* [‘age-lasting salvation’ — referring to the saving of the soul in relation to the 1,000-year Messianic Era] *to all them that obey Him*” ([Hebrews 5:9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+5.9&t=NKJV)).

There are numerous, unending problems strewn all along the route; but that which God deems *of incalculable value* is shown — numerous, different ways — *to be worth every effort Christians can possibly expend. Christians are to keep their eyes fixed on the goal, casting all their care upon Him, committing their way to the Lord and relying upon Him to bring matters to pass and to see them safely through* (*cf*. [Psalm 37:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+37.5&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 12:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.1-2&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 5:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+5.7&t=NKJV)).

Christians are to “*count it all joy*” when falling into various trials and testing, knowing that “the trying” of their faith “works patience [‘patient endurance’]”; and they are to faithfully endure under the various trials and testing after this fashion in order that the Holy Spirit can progressively perform a work in their lives (the metamorphosis of [Romans 12:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Romans+12.2&t=NKJV)) which will, in the end, result in their being “perfect [‘mature’] and entire [‘complete’], wanting nothing [‘lacking nothing’]” ([James 1:2-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=James+1.2-4&t=NKJV)).

And, governing their pilgrim walk after the instructed fashion, “*through faith and patience* [‘patient endurance’]” Christians will one day “*inherit the promises*.”

1) Original Promises to Abraham

The example that the Spirit of God provides at this point in Hebrews, to illustrate “*faith and patience*” in relation to one’s calling, is that of Abraham. Abraham was called out of one land in order to realize an inheritance in another land. He was called from Ur of the Chaldees to realize an inheritance in the land of Canaan.

While still in Ur, God commanded and promised Abraham:

*Now the LORD had said to Abram: “Get out of your country, from your family and from your father’s house, to a land that I will show you.*

*I will make you a great nation; I will bless you and make your name great; and you shall be a blessing.*

*I will bless those who bless you, and I will curse him who curses you; and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed.”* ([Genesis 12:1-3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+12.1-3&t=NKJV))

Then, after Abraham had departed Ur and was in the land of Canaan, following several experiences, God said to him:

*And the LORD said to Abram, after Lot had separated from him: “Lift your eyes now and look from the place where you are -- northward, southward, eastward, and westward;*

*for all the land that you see I give to you and your descendants forever.*

*And I will make your descendants as the dust of the earth; so that if a man could number the dust of the earth, then your descendants also could be numbered.*

*Arise, walk in the land through its length and its width, for I give it to you.”* ([Genesis 13:14-17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+13.14-17&t=NKJV))

Then beyond that, the Lord reaffirmed these words to Abraham by making *an unconditional, everlasting covenant* with him:

*On the same day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying: “To your descendants I have given this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the River Euphrates*

*the Kenites, the Kenezzites, the Kadmonites,*

*the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaim,*

*the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.”* ([Genesis 15:18-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+15.18-21&t=NKJV))

Placing the preceding in perspective, the seed of Abraham (through Isaac and Jacob [[Genesis 17:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+17.19&t=NKJV), [21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+17.21&t=NKJV); [21:12](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+21.12&t=NKJV); [25:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+25.23&t=NKJV); [26:3-4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+26.3-4&t=NKJV); [27:37](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+27.37&t=NKJV); [28:13-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+28.13-14&t=NKJV)]) was to be multiplied in an innumerable manner and dwell as a separate, distinct nation in the land to which Abraham had been called. And, with the seed of Abraham in this land, God would bring matters to pass after such a fashion that all the other nations of the earth (all the Gentile nations) would be blessed through the nation emanating from the loins of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob.

2) Subsequent Promises to Abraham

The preceding outlines God’s promises concerning a seed and a land, along with God’s purpose, given to Abraham at the beginning of and at different times during his pilgrim journey. The reference in Hebrews though is to God’s promise to Abraham at a later point in time (“*after he had patiently endured*” [[Hebrews 6:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.15&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Hebrews 6:13-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.13-14&t=NKJV)]), moving the matter beyond the preceding promises. The reference is to God’s promise recorded in [Genesis 22](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22&t=NKJV), immediately following the account of Abraham offering his son on a mount in the land of Moriah ([Genesis 22:1-14](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.1-14&t=NKJV); *cf*. [Hebrews 11:17-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+11.17-19&t=NKJV)), some five or six decades after God’s original promises to Abraham in Ur.

At this time God said unto Abraham:

. . . *“By Myself I have sworn, says the LORD, because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son*

*blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply your descendants as the stars of the heaven and as the sand that is on the seashore; and your descendants shall possess the gate of their enemies.*

*In your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice.”* ([Genesis 22:16-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.16-18&t=NKJV))

The previous promises given to Abraham — at the beginning of and at different times during his pilgrim walk (at the beginning of and at different times during the long period of “*faith and patience*”) — were, as previously stated, *unconditional in nature*. But now *a conditional aspect of the matter comes into view.* The nations would be blessed through Abraham’s seed, from both heavenly and earthly spheres, *because Abraham had obeyed God’s voice*.

Thus, though the land was given to Abraham and his seed through an *unconditional covenant*, the people of Israel dwelling in the land, with God’s blessings flowing through the Jewish people out to the Gentiles nations of the earth, was *conditional* — something clearly seen in the covenant made with Israel at Sinai, which, as all covenants following the Abrahamic covenant, was based on and had to do with this initial covenant.

God, at this time, told the Jewish people, through Moses:

*Now therefore, if you will indeed obey My voice and keep My covenant, then you shall be a special treasure to Me above all people; for all the earth is Mine.*

*And you shall be to Me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation. These are the words that you shall speak to the children of Israel.”* ([Exodus 19:5-6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+19.5-6&t=NKJV))

Then, the book of Hebrews, reiterating the subsequent experiences of the unfaithful generation under Moses, states exactly the same thing relative to Christians concerning promises and blessings being of the *same conditional nature* as they pertain to their heavenly calling:

*And to whom did He swear that they would not enter His rest, but to those who did not obey?* ([Hebrews 3:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.18&t=NKJV))

So we see that they could not enter in because of unbelief [unfaithfulness].

Let us [Christians under Christ] therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.

For to us was the gospel preached, as well as to them [the good news concerning the land, not the good news concerning salvation by grace]: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith by them that heard it” ([Hebrews 3:18-4:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.18-4.2&t=NKJV)).

In the covenant that God made with Abraham in Genesis chapter fifteen ([Genesis 15:8-21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+15.8-21&t=NKJV)), animals were slain, with God alone passing between the slain animals. This was an Eastern way of saying that *I would have to be as one of these slain animals if this covenant is ever broken.*

Then, in Genesis chapter twenty-two, another element is added to the matter. In connection with that which God promised Abraham, before reiterating the matter in this passage, *God swore by Himself* (for there was none greater by whom He could swear) *that His promises to Abraham would be brought to pass* ([Genesis 22:16-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.16-18&t=NKJV)).

These promises would be brought to pass at the same time Christ exercised the Melchizedek priesthood, typified in [Genesis 14:18-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+14.18-19&t=NKJV) (*cf*. [Hebrews 6:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.20&t=NKJV)). And in this respect, note that which the Father said to the Son in [Psalm 110:4](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Psalm+110.4&t=NKJV):

*The LORD has sworn* [by Himself], *and will not relent* [He will not change His mind], “*You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek*.”

Though *a conditional element* enters into the matter — faithfulness, obedience — the promises are based on that which is *unconditional. And the whole of the matter is affirmed in this respect by God swearing by Himself, for there was none greater by whom He could sware.*

The Hope Set Before Us

Insofar as Abraham having both a heavenly seed and an earthly seed that would one day rule over the Gentile nations and through whom the Gentile nations would be blessed, the matter is as certain as the veracity of God’s oath. *God has sworn by Himself concerning the matter.*

Israel, Abraham’s earthly seed through natural, lineal descent from Isaac and Jacob, will one day dwell in the land of Canaan at the head of the nations, with Christ seated on David’s throne in their midst. And not only will Israel rule the nations after this fashion but the nations will be blessed through Christ and Israel.

And the Church, Abraham’s heavenly seed by positionally being “*in Christ*” ([Galatians 3:16](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.16&t=NKJV), [28-29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.28-29&t=NKJV)), will one day dwell in a heavenly land at the head of the nations. The Church will occupy the position of consort queen, seated on the throne with Christ (Christ actually will have a dual reign — seated on *David’s throne* in the earthly Jerusalem and on *His own throne* in the heavenly Jerusalem. The Church though will reign as consort queen with Him only from *His own throne* in the heavens, not from *David’s throne* on the earth). And not only will the Church rule the nations after this fashion — as co-heir with Christ — but the nations will be blessed through Christ and the Church.

Both Israel and the Church possess *a hope*, and that hope is in relation to the calling of each. For Israel, it is *earthly* and has its basis in [Genesis 22:16-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.16-18&t=NKJV); and for the Church, it is *heavenly* and has its basis at the same point in Scripture.

1) Israel’s Hope

The hope of Israel is mentioned in [Acts 28:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+28.20&t=NKJV). Paul was in Rome, imprisoned and bound by a chain, “*for the hope of Israel*.” And that hope is explained in [Acts 26:6-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+26.6-7&t=NKJV). It has to do with “*the promise made by God to our fathers*,” and it is connected with Israel’s future “*resurrection*” ([Acts 23:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+23.6&t=NKJV); [24:15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Acts+24.15&t=NKJV)). That is, “*the hope of Israel*” revolves around the promises given to Abraham and reiterated to Isaac and Jacob being realized following the resurrection of Old Testament saints at Christ’s coming.

And Israel is not going to realize this hope apart from the two indispensables — “*faith and patience* [‘patient endurance’].” Israel is going to have to pass through “*the time of Jacob’s trouble*,” a time of trouble “*such as has not been since the beginning of the world until this time, no, nor ever shall be*” ([Jeremiah 30:7-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jeremiah+30.7-9&t=NKJV); [Matthew 24:21](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+24.21&t=NKJV)).

Israel, during this time, will be brought into a position wherein the nation will be forced to cry out to the God of their fathers. They will actually be forced into a position of faith (belief) in God; and when Christ returns and the Jewish people look upon their Messiah, the nation will then believe in Him. A nation, at that time — through belief — will *be brought forth “in one day,” born “at once”* (*cf*. [Exodus 2:23-25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+2.23-25&t=NKJV); [3:7-8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Exodus+3.7-8&t=NKJV); [Isaiah 66:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Isaiah+66.8&t=NKJV); [Hosea 5:13-6:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hosea+5.13-6.2&t=NKJV); [Joel 2:1-27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Joel+2.1-27&t=NKJV); [Jonah 2:1-10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Jonah+2.1-10&t=NKJV); [Zechariah 12:10-13:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Zechariah+12.10-13.1&t=NKJV); [14:1-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Zechariah+14.1-9&t=NKJV)).

2) The Christians’ Hope

The text relative to “*hope*” in Hebrews chapter six ([Hebrews 6:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.18&t=NKJV)) though does not concern Israel. Rather, it concerns Christians alone — “. . . *the hope set before us*” — with Israel being in view within the larger scope of the promise as given to Abraham ([Hebrews 6:14-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.14-15&t=NKJV)).

(Actually, Israel *alone* was in view within the original scope of the promise. The lineal descendants of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob were made the repository for both heavenly and earthly promises.

But the heavenly aspect of the promised rulership and blessings was later offered to, rejected by, and taken from Israel at a time when *the kingdom of the heavens* was “*at hand*” [[Matthew 3:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+3.1-2&t=NKJV); [4:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+4.17&t=NKJV); [10:5-7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+10.5-7&t=NKJV); [12:22-32](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+12.22-32&t=NKJV); [21:43](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+21.43&t=NKJV)].

Then the *one new man “in Christ”* was called into existence to be the recipient of that which Israel had rejected [[Matthew 16:18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Matthew+16.18&t=NKJV); [Galatians 3:28-29](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Galatians+3.28-29&t=NKJV); [Ephesians 2:12-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+2.12-15&t=NKJV); [Hebrews 3:1](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.1&t=NKJV); [1 Peter 2:9-11](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+2.9-11&t=NKJV)].)

The Christians’ hope, with its basis found the same place as Israel’s — within God’s promise to Abraham in [Genesis 22:17](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.17&t=NKJV) [18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Genesis+22.18&t=NKJV) — is referred to numerous places in the New Testament; and different aspects of this hope are shown through the different references.

In Ephesians this “*hope*” has to do with an inheritance ([Ephesians 1:11-18](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Ephesians+1.11-18&t=NKJV)); in Colossians it has to do with the coming glory of Christ ([Colossians 1:5](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+1.5&t=NKJV), [23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+1.23&t=NKJV), [27](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Colossians+1.27&t=NKJV)); in 1 Thessalonians it has to do with a future salvation ([1 Thessalonians 5:8](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Thessalonians+5.8&t=NKJV)); in Titus it has to do with an inheritance and life in the coming age ([Titus 1:2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+1.2&t=NKJV); [2:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+2.12-13&t=NKJV); [3:7](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Titus+3.7&t=NKJV)); in 1 Peter it has to do with an inheritance, the salvation of one’s soul, and participation in Christ’s coming glory ([1 Peter 1:3-9](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+1.3-9&t=NKJV); [3:14-15](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+3.14-15&t=NKJV); [4:12-13](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1Peter+4.12-13&t=NKJV)); and in 1 John it has to do with being unashamed and like Christ when Christians see Him “*as He is*” at the judgment seat ([1 John 2:28-3:3](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=1John+2.28-3.3&t=NKJV)).

Hebrews, accordingly, should be no different; and that is exactly the case. The “hope,” in this epistle, is something set before Christians, which is associated with God’s promise to Abraham, an inheritance, and the saving of the soul ([Hebrews 6:13-19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.13-19&t=NKJV); [10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV)).

The “*confidence and the rejoicing of the hope*” is to be held by Christians in an unwavering, steadfast manner ([Hebrews 3:6](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+3.6&t=NKJV); [10:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.23&t=NKJV)); and Christians are exhorted to assemble together for the specified purpose of discussing this hope and being a help to one another in things related to this hope ([Hebrews 10:23-25](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.23-25&t=NKJV) [in [Hebrews 10:23](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.23&t=NKJV), “*profession of our faith*” in the KJV should literally be translated “*confession of the hope*”]).

An Anchor of the Soul

This hope is presented as “*an anchor of the soul*” ([Hebrews 6:19](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.19&t=NKJV)). It is an anchor “*both sure and steadfast, and which enters the Presence behind the veil* [*i.e.*, beyond the veil, inside the Holy of Holies].” And Christ, beyond the veil, is presented as “*the forerunner . . . for us*” (the One who has gone ahead on our behalf). He is presently acting as High Priest on our behalf, anticipating the coming day of His power; and He, as High Priest beyond the veil, is providing a present cleansing for the “*kings and priests*” ([Revelation 5:10](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Revelation+5.10&t=NKJV)) who will ascend the throne with Him during that coming day.

Note how the preceding is reflected at the end of Hebrews chapter six:

*where the forerunner has entered for us, even Jesus, having become High Priest forever* [“with respect to the age,” the coming Messianic Era] *according to the order of Melchizedek*. ([Hebrews 6:20](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+6.20&t=NKJV))

The Christians’ hope is not only firmly anchored on the person of Christ beyond the veil, but it is anchored upon Christ as He will appear *in that coming day — as the great King-Priest, “according to the order of Melchizedek.”* It is *a present hope* that looks to *a future day* for its realization, and it has to do with *the saving of the soul*.

This is why, within the capstone of the book, Christians are exhorted to keep their eyes fixed upon Jesus ([Hebrews 12:1-2](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+12.1-2&t=NKJV)). Christians are exhorted to keep their eyes fixed on the One beyond the veil, where the anchor of their soul lies; and, in this manner, they are to *faithfully run with patient endurance “the race”* set before them.

The summation of the matter surrounding “*faith and patience* [‘patient endurance’]” is possibly best stated in the words concluding the fourth major warning in Hebrews, introducing chapter eleven in the book, the great chapter on “*faith*”:

*For you have need of endurance* [‘patient endurance’], *so that after you have done the will of God, you may receive the promise*:

*For yet a little while, and He who is coming will come and will not tarry.*

*Now the just shall live by faith; but if anyone draws back, My soul has no pleasure in him.*

*But we are not of those who draw back to perdition* [‘destruction,’ ‘ruin’]; *but of those who believe to the saving of the soul*. [*lit*., “of faith with respect to a saving of the soul”] ([Hebrews 10:36-39](https://www.blueletterbible.org/search/preSearch.cfm?Criteria=Hebrews+10.36-39&t=NKJV)).